

GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION



PA.
258
G 55

Cornell University Library

BOUGHT WITH THE INCOME OF THE

SAGE ENDOWMENT FUND

THE GIFT OF

Henry W. Sage

1891

A 354797.

20 111 16.

9366

Greek prose composition :for use in scho

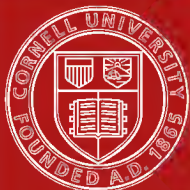


3 1924 021 533 868

DATE DUE[illegible]

This book was digitized by Microsoft Corporation in cooperation with Cornell University Libraries, 2007.

You may use and print this copy in limited quantity for your personal purposes, but may not distribute or provide access to it (or modified or partial versions of it) for revenue-generating or other commercial purposes.



Cornell University
Library

The original of this book is in
the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in
the United States on the use of the text.

GREEK SERIES FOR COLLEGES AND SCHOOLS

EDITED

UNDER THE SUPERVISION OF

HERBERT WEIR SMYTH, PH.D.

ELIOT PROFESSOR OF GREEK LITERATURE IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY

VOLUMES OF THE SERIES

- GREEK GRAMMAR.** By the Editor.
BEGINNER'S GREEK BOOK. Prof. Allen R. Benner, Phillips Academy, Andover; and the Editor. \$1.25.
BRIEF GREEK SYNTAX. Prof. Louis Bevier, Jr., Rutgers College. \$0.90.
GREEK PROSE READER. Prof. F. E. Woodruff, Bowdoin College, and Prof. J. W. Hewitt, Wesleyan University.
GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION FOR SCHOOLS. Clarence W. Gleason, Volkmann School, Boston. \$0.80.
GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION FOR COLLEGES. Prof. Edward H. Spieker, Johns Hopkins University. \$1.30.
AESCHYLUS. AGAMEMNON. Prof. Paul Shorey, University of Chicago.
AESCHYLUS. PROMETHEUS. Prof. J. E. Harry, University of Cincinnati. \$1.50.
ARISTOPHANES. CLOUDS. Dr. L. L. Forman, Cornell University.
DEMOSTHENES. ON THE CROWN. Prof. Milton W. Humphreys, University of Virginia.
EURIPIDES. IPHIGENIA IN TAURIS. Prof. William N. Bates, University of Pennsylvania. \$1.25.
EURIPIDES. MEDEA. Prof. Mortimer Lamson Earle, Columbia University. \$1.25.
HERODOTUS. Books VII.-VIII. Prof. Charles Forster Smith and Prof. Arthur Gordon Laird, University of Wisconsin. \$1.75.
HOMER. ILIAD. Prof. J. R. S. Sterrett, Cornell University.
Books I.-III. AND SELECTIONS. \$1.60. **Books I.-III.** \$1.20.
HOMER. ODYSSEY. Prof. Charles B. Gulick, Harvard University.
LYSIAS. Prof. Charles D. Adams, Dartmouth College. \$1.50.
PLATO. APOLOGY AND CRITO. Prof. Isaac Flagg, University of California. \$1.40.
PLATO. EUTHYPHRO. Prof. William A. Heidel, Wesleyan University. \$1.00.
THEOCRITUS. Prof. Henry R. Fairclough and Prof. Augustus T. Murray, Leland Stanford, Jr., University.
THUCYDIDES. Books II.-III. Prof. W. A. Lamberton, University of Pennsylvania. \$1.75.
THUCYDIDES. Books VI.-VII. Prof. E. D. Perry, Columbia University.
XENOPHON. ANABASIS. Books I.-IV. Dr. M. W. Mather, late Instructor in Harvard University, and Prof. J. W. Hewitt, Wesleyan University. \$1.50.
XENOPHON. HELLENICA (Selections). Prof. Carleton L. Brownson, College of the City of New York. \$1.65.
XENOPHON. MEMORABILIA. Prof. W. W. Baker, Haverford College.
GREEK ARCHAEOLOGY. Prof. Harold N. Fowler, Western Reserve University, and Prof. James R. Wheeler, Columbia University. \$2.00.
GREEK LITERATURE. Dr. Wilmer Cave Wright, Bryn Mawr College. \$1.50.
GREEK PUBLIC LIFE. Prof. Henry A. Sill, Cornell University.
GREEK RELIGION. Arthur Fairbanks, Ph.D., Litt.D., Director of the Boston Museum of Fine Arts. \$1.50.
GREEK SCULPTURE. Prof. Rufus B. Richardson, formerly Director of the American School of Classical Studies, Athens. \$1.50.
INTRODUCTION TO THE GREEK DRAMA. William Fenwick Harris, late Assistant Professor in Harvard University.
BEGINNER'S NEW TESTAMENT GREEK BOOK. Prof. William H. P. Hatch, General Theological Seminary, New York.

Others to be announced later.

GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION

FOR USE IN SCHOOLS

BY

CLARENCE W. GLEASON, A.M.

ROXBURY LATIN SCHOOL



NEW YORK ··· CINCINNATI ··· CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY
E.V.

~~184~~

~~B81~~

SJ

A.354797

COPYRIGHT, 1905, BY
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL, LONDON

GLEASON. GREEK PROSE.

W. P. 3

PREFACE

THE following exercises in Greek composition are intended to be used in connection with the daily work on the text prescribed for drill in syntax in preparation for college. Following a carefully prepared grammatical scheme, they begin with the simplest possible sentences, and are developed gradually until all the more difficult constructions of ordinary "second year" prose are included.

The sentences designated "for oral translation" are made as short as the subject permits, in the hope that the pupil may be encouraged to think and talk without committing himself always to writing. At frequent intervals lessons of connected passages occur, reviewing both the subject-matter of the preceding oral exercises and the points of syntax which they cover. It is understood, however, that many teachers will prefer to treat all the exercises as written work; in such cases the lessons of connected discourse will be found valuable as weekly review exercises.

I am under great obligations for many helpful suggestions and criticisms to Professor Herbert Weir Smyth, editor of the series, and to Dr. William Gallagher of Thayer Academy, South Braintree (Mass.), and Mr. C. E. Burroughs of New York, all of whom read the book in proof with great care.

CLARENCE W. GLEASON.

BOSTON,
April 1, 1905.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFACE	5
SUMMARY OF GRAMMAR	9-52
EXERCISES IN COMPOSITION	53-130
VOCABULARY	133-155

GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION

SUMMARY OF GRAMMAR

[The references are to the Grammars of Hadley and Allen (HA.), Goodwin (G.), Babbitt (B.), and Goodell (Gl.). The examples are chiefly from Xenophon's *Anabasis*.]

1. **Subject Nominative.** [HA. 601; G. 894; B. 325; Gl. 503.] The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.

ἀναβαίνει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος, so Cyrus went up, I. 1. 2.

2. **Subject not expressed.** [HA. 602; G. 897, 898; B. 305; Gl. 493.] The subject is not usually expressed when it is clearly indicated by the verb ending or by the context.

Κῦρον δὲ μεταπέμπεται, he sent for Cyrus, I. 1. 2.

N. So always with so-called impersonal verbs and other verbs when used impersonally, the subject being often an infinitive or a clause.

ὁμῶς δὲ ἐδόκει ἔπεσθαι, still it seemed best to follow, I. 3. 21.

3. **Subject Accusative.** [HA. 939; G. 895. 1; B. 342; Gl. 570. d.] The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.

νομίζω γὰρ ὑμᾶς εἶναι φίλους, for I consider that you are friends, I. 3. 6.

4. **Subject not expressed.** [HA. 940, 941; G. 895. 2; B. 630; Gl. 571.] The subject of the infinitive is generally omitted when it is the same as the subject or object of the

leading verb. A modifier of the subject then agrees with the subject of the leading verb. Cp. 10.

ἀδικεῖσθαι νομίζει ὑφ' ἡμῶν, he considers that he is wronged by us,
1. 3. 10.

5. Agreement of Verb and Subject. [HA. 603; G. 899. 1; B. 495; Gl. 495.] A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

ἐτελεύτησε Δαρείος, Darius died, 1. 1. 3.

N. But with two or more subjects the verb may agree only with the nearer or more important (HA. 607; G. 901; B. 496. 1; Gl. 498).

εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν Μένων καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, Menon and his men held the right, 1. 2. 15.

6. Neuter Plural Subject. [HA. 604; G. 899. 2; B. 498; Gl. 496.] A neuter plural subject regularly takes a singular verb.

τὰ δὲ κρέα ἦν παραπλήσια τοῖς ἐλαφείοις, the meat was much like venison, 1. 5. 2.

7. Predicate Noun and Adjective. [HA. 614; G. 907; B. 326, cp. 420; Gl. 502, cp. 546.] With verbs meaning *be, become, appear, be named, chosen, thought*, etc., a noun or adjective in the predicate is in the same case as the subject. A predicate adjective agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

ὁ ποταμὸς καλεῖται Μαρσύας, the river is called Marsyas, 1. 2. 8.
δῶρα ἃ νομίζεται τίμια, gifts which are considered valuable, 1. 2. 27.

8. Apposition. [HA. 623; G. 911; B. 317; Gl. 502.] A noun (or pronoun) following another to describe it, and meaning the same person or thing, agrees with it in case. This is called **apposition**.

ἀφικνεῖται Ἐπύαξα, ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνή, Epyaxa arrived, the wife of Syennesis, I. 2. 12.

εἰς Θύμβριον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, to Thymbrium, an inhabited city, I. 2. 13.

9. Agreement of Adjectives. [HA. 620; G. 918; B. 420; Gl. 542.] Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

This applies also to the article, participles, and adjective pronouns.

ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, on this day, I. 7. 14.

τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν ἤθροίζεν, he assembled the Greek force, I. 1. 6.

10. Adjectives and Nouns with the Omitted Subject of Infinitive. [HA. 940; G. 927; B. 631; Gl. 543. a.]

When the subject of the infinitive is omitted because it is the same as that of the leading verb, adjectives and nouns which would agree with the omitted subject commonly agree with the preceding subject nominative.

αὐτὸς δ' οὐκ ἔφη ἵέναι, he said that he should not go, I. 3. 8.

11. Substantives. [HA. 621; G. 932; B. 424; Gl. 544.]

An adjective or participle, generally with the article, may be used as a noun.

ἄρχων, commander, I. 1. 2; οἱ φεύγοντες, the exiles, I. 1. 7; τὰ Λύκαια, the Lycaean sacrifices, I. 2. 10; τὸ μέσον, the center, I. 2. 15.

N. So sometimes an adverb or prepositional phrase: τὰ παρ' ἐμοί, life with me, I. 7. 4; οἱ οἴκοι, those at home, I. 7. 4; ὁ Κῦρος σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν, Cyrus with those about him, I. 5. 7.

12. The Article. [HA. 656; G. 941; B. 444; Gl. 551.]

The definite article, ὁ, ἡ, τό, generally corresponds to our article *the*. Cp. 28.

τὼ παῖδε, the (two) boys, I. 1. 1; ἡ ἀρχή, the province, I. 1. 2.

13. Proper Names. [HA. 663; G. 943; B. 446; Gl. 551. a.] Proper names, if well known or previously mentioned, may take the article.

διαβάλλει τὸν Κῦρον, he falsely accused Cyrus, I. 1. 3.

14. The Article as Adjective. [HA. 658; G. 949; B. 447; Gl. 551. d.] The article is often used as an unemphatic possessive pronoun.

ἡ γυνὴ αὐτὸν ἔπεισε, his wife persuaded him, I. 2. 26.

15. Βασιλεύς. [HA. 660. c; G. 957; B. 446.] Βασιλεύς (sometimes with μέγας) is generally used without the article, to designate the king of Persia.

αὐτόμολοι παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως, deserters from the Great King, I. 7. 2.

βασιλεὺς οὐ μαχεῖται, the King will not fight, I. 7. 18.

16. Abstract Nouns. [HA. 659; G. 944; B. 448; Gl. 551. b.] Abstract nouns generally take the article, as ἡ σοφία, *wisdom*.

17. Position of the Article. [HA. 666–668; G. 959; B. 450–452; Gl. 552. a.] The article always precedes the word it modifies. The position of a modifier immediately following the article is called the Attributive Position.

ὁ σοφὸς ἀνὴρ	} the wise man.
ὁ ἀνὴρ ὁ σοφός	
ἀνὴρ ὁ σοφός	

N. Of these the first arrangement is most common.

τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας, the left wing, I. 8. 4.

ἡ ἀρχὴ ἡ πατρώα, my ancestral province, I. 7. 6.

στρουθοὶ αἱ μεγάλαι, the great "sparrows," I. 5. 2.

18. Attributive Position. [HA. 666. a; G. 960; B. 451; Gl. 552. a.] Attributive adjectives, possessive pronouns,

and in general most attributive dependent genitives (except partitives and the genitive of the personal pronouns) have the attributive position.

ὁ ἐμὸς πατήρ, my father, 1. 6. 6.

οἱ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ φίλοι, the friends of my brother, 1. 7. 6.

19. Predicate Position. [HA. 670; G. 971; B. 453; Gl. 552. c.] A limiting word preceding the article or following both article and noun is in the predicate position.

ὁ ἀνὴρ σοφός, the man (is) wise.

σοφὸς ὁ ἀνὴρ, wise (is) the man.

20. Demonstrative pronouns regularly require the article in the predicate position. [HA. 673; G. 974; B. 456; Gl. 553.]

ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, on this day, 1. 7. 14.

τόνδε τὸν τρόπον, in the following way, 1. 1. 9.

21. The partitive genitive and limiting genitives of personal pronouns (including αὐτός) when used with the article take the predicate position. [HA. 673. b; G. 977; B. 457; Gl. 554.]

τούτων δὲ οἱ πλείστοι Θρᾷκες, and most of these (were) Thracians, 1. 5. 13.

ὑμῶν τὸν μὲν οἶκαδε βουλόμενον ἀπιέναι, whoever of you wishes to return, 1. 7. 4.

N. So either ὁ πατήρ ὑμῶν or ὁ ὑμέτερος πατήρ, your father.

22. Ἕκαστος, ἐκάτερος, ἄμφω, and ἀμφοτέρος have the predicate position like a demonstrative. [HA. 673. a; G. 976; B. 456; Gl. 554.]

N. With ἕκαστος the article may be omitted.

τὼ παῖδε ἀμφοτέρω, both lads, 1. 1. 1.

ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος, each nation, 1. 8. 9.

23. ὁ ἄλλος in the singular generally means *the rest of*; οἱ ἄλλοι means *the others*. [G. 966; B. 492. n.]

τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα, the rest of the army, 1. 2. 25.

οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί, the other generals, 1. 2. 15.

N. Both ὁ ἄλλος and ἄλλος sometimes mean *else, besides*.

οὐ γὰρ ἦν χόρτος οὐδὲ ἄλλο οὐδὲν δένδρον, for there was no grass, and not even a tree besides, 1. 5. 5.

24. Πολύς with the article usually means *the greater part*. [HA. 665; G. 967; Gl. 556.]

πολύ, much; τὸ πολύ, the greater part.

πολλοί, many; οἱ πολλοί, the multitude, the majority.

πλείστοι, very many; οἱ πλείστοι, most, the majority.

τὸ μὲν δὴ πολὺ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ, the greater part of the Greek force,
1. 4. 13.

πλείστοι ὄνοι ἄγριοι, very many wild asses, 1. 5. 2.

τούτων δὲ οἱ πλείστοι Θρᾷκες, and the most of these (were) Thracians, 1. 5. 13.

25. The adjectives μέσος, *middle*, ἄκρος, *pointed*, ἔσχατος, *farthest*, and ἡμισυς, *half*, in the predicate position, mean *the middle of, top or tip of, last of, half of*. [HA. 671; G. 978; B. 454; Gl. 556.]

διὰ μέσου δὲ τοῦ παραδείσου, through the middle of the park,
1. 2. 7.

πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος μέσης, before the center of the line, 1. 2. 17.

[διὰ τοῦ μέσου παραδείσου *would mean* through the central park (of three).]

26. Πᾶς (σύμπας, ἅπας), *all*, and ὅλος, *whole*, generally have the predicate position. [HA. 672; G. 979; B. 455.]

πᾶσαν τὴν ὁδόν, all the march, 1. 5. 9.

ἅπαν τὸ μέσον, all the part between, 1. 4. 4.

ἐκέλευσε . . . ἐπιχωρήσαι ὅλην τὴν φάλαγγα, he ordered the phalanx to advance in a body, 1. 2. 17. [τὴν ὅλην φάλαγγα *would mean* the whole of the phalanx.]

N. But they may also be used like attributive adjectives in the attributive position.

οἱ σύμπαντες ὁπλῖται, the whole body of hoplites, 1. 2. 9.

27. Demonstrative Article. [HA. 654; G. 981; B. 443; Gl. 549.] The original demonstrative force of the article survives chiefly in the expression ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ, *the one . . . the other*; plural, *some . . . others*.

τοὺς μὲν ἀπέκτεινε, τοὺς δ' ἐξέβαλεν, he put to death some, others he banished, 1. 1. 7.

N. So ὁ δέ, *and he, but he*, at the beginning of a sentence with change of subject is found without a preceding ὁ μὲν.

ἐδάκρυε πολλὸν χρόνον ἐστώς· οἱ δὲ ὁρῶντες ἐθαύμαζον, he wept a long time standing; and they marveled as they beheld, 1. 3. 2.

28. Indefinite Article. [G. 1015. 2; B. 491. n. 1.]

There is no indefinite article in Greek. Sometimes, however, the indefinite pronoun τις is nearly equivalent to English *a* or *an*.

μέρος τι τῆς εὐταξίας, an example of their discipline, 1. 5. 8.

29. Personal Pronouns. [HA. 677; G. 985; B. 467; Gl. 557.] The nominatives of the personal pronouns are seldom used except for emphasis, as the endings of the verb indicate clearly the person of the subject.

ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ οὐκ ἐθέτετε πείθεσθαι, ἐγὼ σὺν ὑμῖν ἔσομαι, since you do not wish to obey me, I will follow with you, 1. 3. 6.

30. Personal Pronouns. [HA. 263; G. 986; B. 139; Gl. 195.] The forms ἐμοῦ, ἐμοί, ἐμέ, are more emphatic than

the enclitic *μοῦ, μοί, μέ*. But with prepositions (except *πρός*) the longer forms are preferred.

καὶ πείσας ἐμὲ πιστὰ πάλιν ἔδωκάς μοι, and winning me (*not* the king) over, you again gave me pledges, I. 6. 7.

31. *Οὔ, οἱ, ἔ*. [HA. 677. a, 685; G. 987; B. 468; Gl. 197.] In Attic Greek the pronoun of the third person, *οὔ, οἱ, ἔ*, is always reflexive (cp. 33), but only *οἱ* and *σφέις, σφῶν, σφίσι, σφᾶς*, are used.

εἰσῆσαν . . . ἀξιούντες εἰδέναι τί σφίσιν ἔσται, they went in, demanding to know what they were to have, I. 7. 8.

32. *Αὐτός*. [HA. 678–682; G. 989; B. 475; Gl. 199.] *Αὐτός* has three uses:—

1. In all its cases it may be an intensive adjective, *himself, herself, itself* (Latin *ipse*).

ὥς αὐτὸς σὺ ὁμολογεῖς, as you yourself admit, I. 6. 7.

δι' αὐτῶν τῶν πολεμίων, through the enemy themselves, right through the enemy, I. 8. 20.

2. When preceded by the article, it means *the same* (Latin *idem*).

τὰ αὐτὰ βουλευόμενοι, plotting the same things, I. 1. 7.

ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ (sc. *χωρίῳ*), in the same place, I. 8. 14.

3. In the oblique cases *αὐτός* is the ordinary pronoun of the third person, *him, her, it, them* (Latin *is*).

στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπέδειξε, he appointed him general, I. 1. 2.

33. **Reflexive Pronouns.** [HA. 683; G. 993; B. 470, 471; Gl. 200.] Reflexive pronouns refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand (*direct reflexives*).

Sometimes in a dependent clause they refer to the subject of the leading verb (*indirect reflexives*).

Direct: ἔγνωσ τὴν σαντοῦ δύναμιν, you recognized your own power, 1. 6. 7.

τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ βαρβάρων ἐπεμελεῖτο, he looked out for the barbarians with him, 1. 1. 5.

Indirect: ἤξιον . . . δοθῆναι οἱ ταύτας τὰς πόλεις, he asked that those cities be given to him(self), 1. 1. 8.

ἀξιοῦντες εἰδέναι τί σφίσιν ἔσται, demanding to know what they should have, 1. 7. 8.

34. Αὐτός often is used instead of the indirect reflexive. [HA. 684; G. 992; B. 471. 1.]

καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ βαρβάρων ἐπεμελεῖτο ὡς . . . εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν αὐτῷ, and he took pains that the barbarians with him might be well disposed toward him, 1. 1. 5.

35. Possessive Pronouns. [HA. 689, 675; G. 998, 946; B. 477, 445; Gl. 204, 551. c.] The possessive pronouns are generally equivalent to the possessive genitive of the personal pronouns.

N. They have the article with attributive position when referring to definite individuals, but not otherwise.

ὁ ἐμὸς πατήρ = ὁ πατήρ μου, my father, 1. 6. 6.

ἐμὸς δὲ ἀδελφός, a brother of mine, 1. 7. 9.

36. Demonstrative Pronouns. [HA. 695, 696; G. 1004, 1005; B. 481, 482; Gl. 206–208.] Οὗτος and ὅδε, *this*, generally refer to what is near or present; ἐκεῖνος, *that*, refers to what is more remote. Οὗτος often refers to what precedes, ὅδε to what follows.

ταῦτα εἶπεν, he said this (before stated), 1. 3. 7.

τόνδε τὸν τρόπον, in the following manner, 1. 1. 9.

ἔλεξε τάδε, he spoke as follows, 1. 4. 13.

37. Those Who. [G. 1007; B. 650. n. 2; cp. Gl. 582. a.] *Those who* is expressed in Greek by a participle with the article.

οἱ παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν οἰκοῦντες, those who dwell along the coast, 1.
2. 24.

38. Interrogative Pronouns. [HA. 700; G. 1011-1013; B. 489, 490; cp. Gl. 217.] The interrogative *τίς*, *who?* *what?* may be either substantive or adjective. *τίς* may be used in both direct and indirect questions, though in indirect questions the relative *ὅστις* is more common.

τί οὖν κελεύω ποιῆσαι; what, then, do I bid you do? 1. 4. 14.

ἐθαύμασε τίς παραγγέλλει, καὶ ἤρετο ὃ τι εἴη τὸ σύνθημα, he wondered who was giving orders and asked what the watchword was, 1.
8. 16.

39. Indefinite Pronouns. [HA. 701; G. 1015; B. 491; cp. Gl. 217, 218.] The indefinite *τις* (enclitic), *some*, *any*, may be either adjective or substantive.

N. It is sometimes nearly equivalent to an indefinite article. See 28.

τοξευθῆναί τις ἐλέγετο, a man was said to have been shot, 1. 8. 20.

μέρος τι τῆς εὐταξίας ἦν θεάσασθαι, it was possible to behold an example of their discipline, 1. 5. 8.

40. Relative Pronouns. [HA. 627; G. 1019; B. 483; Gl. 613. a.] A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.

N. The relative follows the person of the antecedent.

ναῦς . . . αἷς ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον, ships with which he was besieging Miletus, 1. 4. 2.

ἔχων ὁπλίτας ὧν ἐστρατήγει, with troops which he commanded, 1. 4. 3.

41. Antecedent Omitted. [HA. 996; G. 1026; B. 486; Gl. 614.] The antecedent of a relative may be omitted when it is implied in the context, especially if it is indefinite or general.

Κῦρος δὲ ἔχων οὓς εἶρηκα, Cyrus with (those) whom I have mentioned, I. 2. 5.

42. Assimilation and Attraction. [HA. 994; G. 1031, 1032; B. 484; Gl. 613. b.] A relative is often attracted from the accusative to the case of its antecedent if this is a genitive or a dative.

ἐκ τῶν πόλεων ὧν ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων, from the cities which he happened to hold, I. 1. 8.

N. This assimilation takes place even when the antecedent is omitted, as ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ ἔπαθον ὑπ' ἐκείνου, in return for (the favors) which I received at his hands, I. 3. 4.

43. Incorporation. [HA. 995; G. 1037; B. 485; Gl. 613. d.] The antecedent is often attracted into the relative clause, and agrees with the relative in case.

ἀποπέμψαι ὃ εἶχε στράτευμα, to send back the army which he had, I. 2. 1.

44. Nominative Case. [HA. 706; G. 1043; B. 325, 326; Gl. 503.] The nominative is used chiefly as the subject of a finite verb (1), or in the predicate after verbs signifying *to be*, etc.

ἀναβαίνει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος, so Cyrus went up, I. 1. 2.

Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἦν, Clearchus was a Lacedaemonian exile, I. 1. 9.

45. Vocative Case. [HA. 709; G. 1044; B. 327; cp. Gl. 59.]

The vocative, with or without ὦ, is used in addressing a person or thing.

καὶ μὴν, ὦ Κῦρε, λέγουσί τινες, and yet, Cyrus, some say, I. 7. 5.

N. The nominative is sometimes used instead of the vocative (HA. 707; G. 1045; B. 326. n.; Gl. 503).

46. Accusative Case. [HA. 711; G. 1047; B. 329; Gl. 530.] The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative.

Κῦρον δὲ μεταπέμπεται, he summoned Cyrus, 1. 1. 2.

47. Accusative. [HA. 712; G. 1048, 1049; B. 329. 1, 2; Gl. 530.] Many Greek verbs are transitive whose English equivalents are intransitive and require a preposition. On the other hand, many verbs transitive in English take either a genitive or a dative in Greek.

ὥς μηκέτι δέη τοῦτον φυλάττεσθαι, that we may no longer have to guard against him, 1. 6. 9.

ἡσχύνθημεν καὶ θεοὺς καὶ ἀνθρώπους, we were ashamed before gods and men alike, 2. 3. 22.

But *ἔφη δὲ Κῦρον ἄρχειν τοῦ λόγου*, he said that Cyrus began his speech, 1. 6. 5.

48. Cognate Accusative. [HA. 715; G. 1051; B. 331; Gl. 536.] Many verbs are followed by an accusative of kindred meaning.

τὰ Λύκαια ἔθυσε, he celebrated with sacrifices the Lycaean festival, 1. 2. 10.

49. Accusative of Specification. [HA. 718; G. 1058; B. 337; Gl. 537.] The accusative may be used with verbs, adjectives, nouns, or clauses, to specify the particular or detail to which they apply.

ποταμὸς Κύδνος ὄνομα, εἶδος δύο πλέθρων, a river, Cydnus by name, two plethra in width, 1. 2. 23.

50. Adverbial Accusative. [HA. 719; G. 1060; B. 336; Gl. 540.] The accusative sometimes has the force of an adverb.

τόνδε τὸν τρόπον, in the following manner, 1. 1. 9.

τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν, by the shortest road, 1. 2. 20.

πρῶτον, first, 1. 2. 16.

51. Accusative of Extent. [HA. 720; G. 1062; B. 338; Gl. 538.] The accusative may denote extent of time or space.

ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας ἑπτά, there he remained seven days, 1. 2. 6.

ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς τρεῖς, παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν, he marched a three days' journey, twenty parasangs, 1. 2. 19.

52. Accusative in Oaths. [HA. 723; G. 1066, 1067; B. 344; Gl. 532.] The accusative follows the adverbs of swearing, *νή* and *μά*, *by*.

N. *Νή* or *ναί μά* is affirmative, *μά* alone is negative.

Νῆ Δί', εἶπερ γε . . . ἐμὸς δὲ ἀδελφός, yes indeed, if he's a brother of mine, 1. 7. 9.

ἀλλὰ μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς οὐκ ἔγωγε αὐτοὺς διώξω, but by the gods I shall not pursue them, 1. 4. 8.

53. Two Accusatives. [HA. 724; G. 1069; B. 340; Gl. 535.] Verbs signifying *ask*, *demand*, *teach*, *remind*, *deprive*, and a few others, may take two accusatives (one of the person and one of the thing).

Κῦρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα, to ask boats of Cyrus (cp. genitive of separation, 68), 1. 3. 14.

ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας Ἑλλήνας τὴν γῆν, to deprive the Greek inhabitants of their land, 1. 3. 4.

N. When these verbs are used in the passive the accusative of the thing is retained, as *ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τὴν γῆν*, to be robbed of one's land.

54. Two Accusatives. [HA. 725. a; G. 1073; B. 340; cp. Gl. 536. c.]

Verbs meaning *to do anything to* or *say anything of* a person take two accusatives.

N. These verbs may take *εὖ* or *καλῶς*, *well*, or *κακῶς*, *ill*, instead of the accusative of the thing.

εἴ τις τι ἀγαθὸν ἢ κακὸν ποιήσειεν αὐτόν, if anybody (ever) did him good or ill, 1. 9. 11.

κακῶς ἐποίησας τὴν ἐμὴν χώραν, you did my country harm, 1. 6. 7.

55. Two Accusatives. [HA. 726; G. 1077; B. 341; Gl. 534.] Verbs meaning *to name, appoint, make, regard*, and the like, may have a predicate accusative, besides the object.

στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπέδειξε, he appointed him general, 1. 1. 2.

ἰχθύων . . . οὓς οἱ Σύροι θεοὺς ἐνόμιζον, fish which the Syrians regarded as gods, 1. 4. 9.

N. In the passive construction the object accusative becomes the subject nominative, and the predicate accusative becomes a predicate nominative. Cp. 53.

ὁ ποταμὸς καλεῖται Μαρσύας, the river is called Marsyas, 1. 2. 8.

Accusative Absolute. See 161.

THE OF GENITIVE

56. Attributive Genitive. [HA. 728, 729; G. 1084, 1085; Gl. 506.] One noun may have another depending on it in the genitive. This is the *attributive genitive*.

N. This may be a possessive, subjective, or objective genitive, genitive of measure, material, cause, or partitive genitive.

τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔχων ὁπλίτας, with hoplites of the Greeks, 1. 1. 2.

τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν, a city of Phrygia, 1. 2. 19.

57. Predicate Genitive. [HA. 732; G. 1093, 1094; cp. B. 348. 1; Gl. 508.] The genitive may stand in the relation of a predicate adjective, after verbs meaning *be, become*, etc.

N. The predicate genitive may express any of the relations of the attributive genitive, as possession, material, etc.

ἦσαν αἱ Ἴωνικαὶ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνης, the Ionian cities were Tisaphernes', 1. 1. 6.

58. Possessive Genitive. [HA. 729. a, 732. a; G. 1085. 1, 1094. 1; B. 348; Gl. 506. a.] The attributive or predicate genitive may denote possession or ownership.

Attrib.: ὥστε ἐλεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον, so as to take their boat, 1. 4. 8.

Pred.: αἱ δὲ κῶμαι Παρυσάτιδος ἦσαν, the villages were Parysatis', 1. 4. 9.

59. Subjective and Objective Genitive. [HA. 728. b, c, 732. a; G. 1085. 2, 3, 1094. 2, 3; B. 349, 350; Gl. 506. a.]

The genitive may express the subject or object of an action or feeling.

Subj.: τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων φόβος πολὺς, the fear of the barbarians was great (*i.e.* the barbarians feared greatly), 1. 2. 18.

Obj.: στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπέδειξε πάντων, he appointed him general over all, 1. 1. 2.

60. Genitive with Adjectives. [HA. 753; G. 1139, 1140; B. 351; Gl. 516.] The objective genitive follows many adjectives, especially those of kindred meaning with verbs which take an object or an objective genitive.

δεῖ τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους τούτων ἐγκρατεῖς ποιῆσαι, we must make our friends masters over these, 1. 7. 7.

61. Genitive of Material. [HA. 729. f; G. 1085. 4; B. 352. n.; Gl. 506.] The genitive may denote the material of which anything consists.

πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς, five minas of silver, 1. 4. 13.

62. Genitive of Measure. [HA. 729. d; G. 1085. 5; B. 352. n.; Gl. 506.] The genitive may express measure of space, time, or value (cp. 66).

ποταμὸς εὖρος πλέθρου, a river the width of a plethrum, 1. 4. 4.
τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν, three months' pay, 1. 1. 10.

63. Partitive Genitive. [HA. 729. e; G. 1088; B. 354, 355; Gl. 506.] The genitive may denote the whole of which a part is taken.

τοὺς ἀρίστους τῶν περὶ αὐτόν, the noblest of those about him, 1. 6. 4
ὁ πιστότατος αὐτῷ τῶν σκηπτούχων, the most faithful of his cham-
berlains, 1. 8. 28.

64. Partitive Genitive with Verbs. [HA. 736; G. 1097; B. 356; Gl. 510.] Many verbs whose action affects the object only in part are followed by the genitive. Such are

(a) Verbs meaning *to share* or *enjoy*.

ὅτι . . . οὐδενὸς ἡμῖν μετείη, that we had no share, 3. 1. 20.

(b) Verbs meaning *to touch*, *take hold of*, *begin*, *try*.

ὥς μὴ ἄπτεσθαι τῆς κάρφης τὸ ὕδωρ, that the water might not reach the hay, 1. 5. 10.

οὗτος μὲν αὐτοῦ ἤμαρτεν, this one missed him, 1. 5. 12.

(c) Verbs of the senses, as *taste*, *smell*, *hear*, *remember*, *desire*, *care for*.

τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων ἐπεμελεῖτο, he cared for the barbarians, 1. 1. 5.

ταῦτα δὲ λέγων θορύβου ἤκουσε, as he said this he heard a noise, 1. 8. 16.

(d) Verbs of *leading* and *ruling*.

ὀπλίτας ὧν ἐστρατήγει, hoplites which he commanded, 1. 4. 3.

65. Words of Fullness. [HA. 743; G. 1112; cp. B. 356, 357; Gl. 512.] Verbs and adjectives of fullness and want take a genitive (of material).

κῶμαι πολλαὶ μεσταὶ σίτου, many villages full of food, 1. 4. 19.

ἄλλου οὐτινος ἂν δέησθε, whatever else you want, 1. 4. 15.

66. Price or Value. [HA. 746; G. 1133; B. 353; Gl. 513.] The genitive may denote price or value. Cp. 62.

τὴν καπίθην ἀλεύρων τεττάρων σίγλων, a measure of flour for four sigli, 1. 5. 6.

πολλοῦ μὲν ἄξιος φίλος, a valuable friend (a friend of great value), 1. 3. 12.

67. Genitive of Time. [HA. 759; G. 1136; B. 359; Gl. 515.] The genitive may denote the time within which anything occurs.

βασιλεὺς οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν, the king will not fight within ten days, 1. 7. 18.

THE FROM (OR ABLATIVE) GENITIVE

68. Genitive of Separation. [HA. 748; G. 1117; B. 362; Gl. 509. a.] The genitive is used with words denoting or implying separation. Such are verbs meaning *remove, release, restrain, deprive*.

οὐδὲ τούτων στερήσονται, not even of these shall they be deprived, 1. 4. 8.

ἐνταῦθα διέσχον ἀλλήλων, there they were distant from each other, 1. 10. 4.

69. Genitive of Source. [HA. 750; G. 1130; B. 365; Gl. 509. a.] The genitive may be used to denote source.

Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίγονται παῖδες δύο, of Darius and Parysatis were born two sons, 1. 1. 1.

ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους τὸν Κύρου στόλον, he heard from Tissaphernes of the expedition of Cyrus, 1. 2. 5.

70. Genitive of Comparison. [HA. 755; G. 1153; B. 363; Gl. 517.] The genitive is used after a comparative when ἢ, *than*, is omitted.

κρείττους πολλῶν βαρβάρων, better than many barbarians, 1. 7. 3.

τῶν ἵππων ἔτρεχον θάττον, they ran faster than the horses, 1. 5. 2.

71. Genitive of Comparison with Verbs. [HA. 749; G. 1120; B. 364; Gl. 509. b.] The genitive is used after verbs implying comparison, as *surpass, be inferior*, etc.

περιεῖναι τῶν φίλων, to surpass one's friends, 1. 9. 24.

τούτου . . . οὐχ ἡττησόμεθα, we shall not be inferior to him, 2. 3. 23.

72. Genitive of Cause. [HA. 744; G. 1126; B. 366; Gl. 509. c.] The genitive is used with some verbs of the emotions (as *admiration*, *wonder*, *anger*, etc.) to express cause.

ἀξιοὶ τῆς ἐλευθερίας ἧς ὑμᾶς ἐγὼ εὐδαιμονίζω, worthy of the freedom on which I congratulate you, I. 7. 3.

73. The genitive of cause sometimes is used in exclamations. [HA. 761; G. 1129; B. 366. n.; Gl. 509. c.]

τῇς τύχης, what luck!

74. Genitive of Penalty. [HA. 745; G. 1121; B. 367; Gl. 514.] Some verbs meaning *to accuse*, *convict*, etc., take a genitive of the charge.

διώκει με δώρων, he prosecutes me for bribery.

75. Genitive with Compound Verbs. [HA. 751; G. 1123, 1132; B. 370; cp. Gl. 509. a, 514. a.] The genitive often depends on a preposition included in a compound verb.

N. The most common are compounds of ἀπό, ἐξ, and πρό, and κατά in the sense of *against*.

προειστίηκει τοῦ ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι ξενικοῦ, he was at the head of the mercenary corps in the cities, I. 2. 1.

76. Genitive of Agent. [HA. 818. a; G. 1234; B. 372.] The personal agent of a passive verb is regularly expressed by the genitive with ὑπό. See also 84.

περιεργεῖτο δ' αὐτὴ ὑπὸ τοῦ Μάσκα, this was encircled by the Mascaras, I. 5. 4.

77. Genitive with Adverbs. [HA. 756, 757; G. 1147, 1148; B. 360, 362. 3; Gl. 518. a, b.] The genitive follows many adverbs, especially adverbs of place.

ἔσω καὶ ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν, within and without the gates, 1. 4. 5.

N. Here belong the so-called improper prepositions, ἄνευ, without, πλὴν, except, ἄχρι and μέχρι, up to, until, ἔνεκα, on account of. [HA. 758; G. 1151; B. 362. 3; Gl. 518. c.]

ταύτης ἔνεκα τῆς παρόδου, on account of this pass, 1. 4. 5.

78. Genitive Absolute. [HA. 970; G. 1152; B. 369; Gl. 589.] A noun and a participle not grammatically connected with the rest of the sentence may stand in the genitive absolute.

καλοῦντος τοῦ πατρὸς Κῦρον, when his father called Cyrus, 1. 4. 12.

THE TO OR FOR DATIVE

79. Indirect Object. [HA. 763, 764. 1; G. 1158; B. 375; Gl. 570.] The indirect object of a verb is in the dative (the TO dative).

δίδωσιν αὐτῷ μυρίους δαρεικούς, he gives him 10,000 darics, 1. 1. 9.

80. Dative with Intransitive Verbs. [HA. 764. 2; G. 1159, 1160; B. 376; Gl. 520. a.] Many intransitive verbs require a dative to complete their meaning.

N. These are chiefly verbs meaning *please, command, obey, trust, serve, resist*, etc., with their opposites; also those expressing *friendliness, hostility, blame, anger, threats*. [But πείθω, *persuade*, takes an accusative; so, too, κελεύω, *command*.]

ἐπίστευον γὰρ αὐτῷ, for they trusted him, 1. 2. 2.

ἐμοὶ οὐκ ἐθέλετε πείθεσθαι, you are unwilling to obey me, 1. 3. 6.

81. Dative of Interest. [HA. 766; G. see 82–86; B. 377; Gl. 523, 524.] The (FOR) dative may be used to show the person interested.

Under this general head come the

dative of advantage (82),
dative of possession (83),
dative of agent (84),
dative of reference (85), and
ethical dative (85).

82. Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage. [HA. 767; G. 1165; B. 378; Gl. 523.] The dative of interest may show the person for whose advantage or disadvantage a thing is done.

τὰ ἄκρα ἡμῖν κελεύειν Κῦρον προκαταλαβεῖν, to bid Cyrus seize the heights beforehand for us, 1. 3. 16.

παρὰ τούτου ᾧ λυμαινόμεθα τὴν πρᾶξιν, from him whose (for whom) enterprise we are spoiling, 1. 3. 16.

83. Dative of Possession. [HA. 768; G. 1173; B. 379; Gl. 524. a.] With εἰμί, γίγνομαι, and similar verbs, the dative may denote the possessor.

ἐνταῦθα Κύρῳ βασιλεία ἦν, there Cyrus had a palace, 1. 2. 7.

84. Dative of Agent. [HA. 769; G. 1186, 1188; B. 380; Gl. 524. b.] The dative is used to express the agent regularly with the verbal in τέος, often with the perfect and pluperfect passive.

ἐμοὶ τοῦτο οὐ ποιητέον, this must not be done by me, 1. 3. 15.

πάνθ' ἡμῖν πεποιήται, everything has been done by us, 1. 8. 12.

85. Dative of Reference. [HA. 770, 771; G. 1171, 1172; B. 381, 382; Gl. 523.] The dative of interest may be used to impart a lively or familiar tone to the sentence (*Ethical Dative*), or to express a remote interest, or merely a point of view (*Dative of Reference*).

ἀνάβηθί μοι καὶ μαρτύρησον, come up, please, and testify.

ἐν δεξιᾷ ἐσπλέοντι, on the right as you sail in.

INSTRUMENTAL (BY OR WITH) DATIVE

86. Dative of Means. [HA. 776; G. 1181; B. 387; Gl. 526. a.] The dative is used to denote means or instrument.

σχεδίαῖς διαβαίνοντες, crossing by means of rafts, 1. 5. 10.

ἀκοντίζει τις αὐτὸν παλτῶ, a man struck him with a javelin, 1. 8. 27.

N. *χράσμαι*, *use*, takes a dative of means.

τί βούλεται ἡμῖν χρῆσθαι; for what does he wish to use us?
1. 3. 18.

87. Dative of Manner. [HA. 776; G. 1181; B. 389; Gl. 526. b.] The dative is used to denote manner.

κραυγῇ πολλῇ ἐπίασιν, they advance with a loud shout, 1. 7. 4.

88. Degree of Difference. [HA. 781; G. 1184; B. 388; Gl. 526. c.] The dative of manner is used with comparatives to denote the degree of difference.

προτέρα Κύρου πέντε ἡμέραις ἀφίκετο, she came (by) five days sooner than Cyrus, 1. 2. 25.

89. Dative of Respect. [HA. 780; G. 1182; B. 390; Gl. 527. b.] The dative of manner sometimes tells in what respect a thing is true. See 49.

πλήθει περιῆν βασιλεύς, the king was superior in numbers, 1. 8. 13.

90. Dative of Cause. [HA. 776; G. 1181; B. 391; Gl. 526. a.] The dative may be used to denote cause. See also 72.

ἀποροῦντες τῷ πράγματι, perplexed at the proceeding, 1. 5. 13.

91. Dative of Accompaniment. [HA. 774; G. 1189; B. 392; Gl. 525. a.] The dative (with or without *σύν*, *with*) is used to denote accompaniment.

πολεμήσων σὺν τοῖς φυγάσι, to fight in company with the exiles,
I. I. 11.

ἐξελαύνει συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύματι παντί, he sets out with his
army all in battle array, I. 7. 14.

92. Dative of Association. [HA. 772, 773; G. 1175, 1177; B. 392; Gl. 525.] The dative is used after all words of *union*, *resemblance*, *approach*, or their opposites.

τὰ κρέα ἦν παραπλήσια τοῖς ἐλαφείοις, the flesh was very like venison,
I. 5. 2.

N. This includes words of hostility and fighting.

ἐρίζοντά οἱ, striving with him, I. 2. 8.

ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θραξί, he was warring with the Thracians, I. 1. 9.

93. Dative with Adjectives. [HA. 765; G. 1174; cp. B. 392. 2, 3; Gl. 522.] The dative follows many adjectives and adverbs of kindred meaning with verbs which take the dative.

πιστὸς δὲ Κύρῳ, faithful to Cyrus, I. 7. 5.

ὥς εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχουεν αὐτῷ, that they might be well-disposed to him,
I. 1. 5.

94. Dative with Compound Verbs. [HA. 775; G. 1179; B. 394.] The dative follows many verbs compounded with *σύν*, *έν*, and *ἐπί*, and some compounded with *πρός*, *παρά*, *περί*, and *ὑπό*.

καὶ συνένεμψεν αὐτῇ τοὺς στρατιώτας, and he sent the soldiers with her, I. 2. 20.

95. Dative of Time. [HA. 782; G. 1192; B. 385; Gl. 527. c.] The dative is used to denote time when.

ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, on that day, I. 5. 16.

τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ, on the following day, I. 7. 19.

96. Dative of Place. [HA. 783; cp. G. 1197; B. 384;

Gl. 527.] The dative — in prose generally with a preposition — may denote place where.

ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ, at the trench, 1. 7. 19.

ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ, in the plain, 1. 8. 8.

THE VERB

97. **Primary and Secondary Tenses.** [HA. 301; G. 448; B. 517; Gl. 246.] The tenses of the indicative may be classed as follows :

Primary : present, perfect, future, future-perfect.

Secondary : imperfect, aorist, pluperfect.

N. The historical present is regarded as a secondary tense, and should be rendered by a past indicative.

ἀναβαίνει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος, so Cyrus went up, 1. 1. 2.

98. Peculiar Uses of the Tenses.

1. The present of some verbs may have the force of a perfect, as ἤκω, *have come*, οἴχομαι, *have or be gone*. [HA. 827; G. 1256; B. 521; Gl. 454. f.]

οἶδα γὰρ ὅπῃ οἴχονται, for I know where they have gone, 1. 4. 8.

2. The present of εἶμι, *go*, regularly has a future meaning. [HA. 828. a; G. 1257; B. 524; Gl. 385. b.]

οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι, they said that they would not go, 1. 3. 1.

3. The present and imperfect may be used of attempted action. [HA. 825, 832; G. 1255; B. 523, 527; Gl. 454. c, 459. a.]

τοὺς αὐτοῦ στρατιώτας ἐβιάζετο ἰέναι, he tried to compel his own men to go, 1. 3. 1.

4. The aorist of verbs expressing a state may denote entrance into that state, as ἐβασίλευσε, *he became king*. [HA. 841; G. 1260; B. 529; Gl. 464.]

The aorist sometimes denotes a general truth (*Gnomic Aorist*). [HA. 840; G. 1292; B. 530; Gl. 465.]

The aorist is often used where in English a pluperfect is employed. [HA. 837; G. 1261; B. 528; Gl. 463.]

5. Some perfects have the force of a present [HA. 849; G. 1263; B. 535; Gl. 456. b], as

δέδοικα (I have been frightened), am afraid (I. 7. 7).

κέκτημαι (I have acquired), possess (I. 7. 3).

μύμνημαι (I have reminded myself), remember (I. 7. 5).

οἶδα (I have perceived), know (I. 3. 10).

ἕστηκα (I have set myself), stand (I. 5. 8).

τέθνηκα (I have died), am dead (I. 6. 11).

99. **The Present and Aorist.** [HA. 851; G. 1271, 1272; B. 540, 543; Gl. 475.] In the subjunctive and imperative, and in the optative and infinitive not in indirect discourse, the present and aorist do not differ in time. The present denotes continuance or repetition, the aorist simple occurrence.

Present: φοβοίμην δ' ἄν, I should (always) fear, I. 3. 17.

Aorist: εἰάν μοι πεισθῇτε, if you take my advice (now), I. 4. 14.

100. **Commands.** [HA. 873; G. 1342; B. 583; Gl. 484.] The imperative regularly expresses a command.

τὴν γνώμην ἔχετε, make up your minds, I. 3. 6.

ἀλλὰ ἰόντων, but let them go, I. 4. 8.

101. **Hortatory Subjunctive.** [HA. 866. 1; G. 1344; B. 585; Gl. 472.] The first person of the subjunctive (generally plural) is used in exhortations. Its negative is μή.

ὦμεν ἀγαθοί, let us be brave men.

102. **Prohibitions.** [HA. 874; G. 1346; B. 584; Gl. 473.] Negative commands or prohibitions are expressed

by *μή* and the present imperative (of continued action) or the aorist subjunctive (of a single act).

μή θαυμάζετε, do not wonder, 1. 3. 3.

μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω, let no one of you say, 1. 3. 15.

μή λέξης, do not say (single act).

103. The future indicative with *ὅπως* and *ὅπως μή* is sometimes used in commands and prohibitions. [HA. 886; G. 1352; B. 583. n. 3; Gl. 638. b.]

ὅπως οὖν ἔσεσθε ἄνδρες, see then that you are men, 1. 7. 3.

N. This may be the construction of 112 with an ellipsis of *σκοπεῖτε*.

104. **Deliberative Subjunctive.** [HA. 866. 3; G. 1358; B. 577; Gl. 471.] The subjunctive is used in questions of doubt or deliberation.

τί φῶμεν πρὸς ταῦτα; what shall we say to this?

105. **Οὐ μή and the Future Indicative.** [HA. 1032; G. 1360; B. 569. 2; Gl. 489.] The subjunctive or future indicative is used with *οὐ μή* in a strong denial referring to the future.

οὐκέτι μὴ δύνηται βασιλεύς, the king will no longer be able, 2. 2. 12.

106. **Potential or Hypothetical Optative.** [HA. 872; G. 1327; B. 563; Gl. 479.] The optative with *ἄν* expresses what would be true under any supposed circumstances or conditions.

ἔτι οὖν ἂν γένοιτο πιστός; would you again become faithful? 1. 6. 8.

ὥσπερ ἂν δράμοι τις, just as one would run, 1. 5. 8.

107. **Potential or Hypothetical Indicative.** [HA. 858; G. 1335; B. 565; Gl. 461. c, 467. c.] The past tenses of the indicative with *ἄν* show what would be or would have

been true in an imaginary case known to be unreal. The imperfect here expresses present time, the aorist indicative past time.

(εἰ μὴ ὑμεῖς ἦλθετε), ἐπορευόμεθα ἂν ἐπὶ βασιλέα, (if you had not come), we should be on our way against the king, 2. 1. 4.

108. **Wishes Hopeful.** [HA. 870; G. 1507; B. 587; Gl. 476.] The optative, with or without εἴθε or εἰ γάρ, is used to express a future wish. The negative is μή.

μὴ γένοιτο, God forbid (may it not happen) !
εἴθε γένοιτο, may it come to pass !

109. **Wishes Unattainable.** [HA. 871; G. 1511; B. 588; Gl. 470.] The past tenses of the indicative with εἴθε or εἰ γάρ express an unattainable wish. The imperfect generally refers to present time, the aorist to past time.

εἰ γὰρ τοσαύτην δύναμιν εἶχον, O that I had so much power!

N. ὄφελον, *ought*, with the infinitive may have the same force.

ἀλλ' ὄφελε μὲν Κῦρος ζῆν, O that Cyrus were alive! 2. 1. 4.

110. **Final Clauses.** [HA. 881; G. 1362, 1635; B. 590; Gl. 642, 636, 638. c.] Pure Final Clauses, or clauses of purpose, with ἵνα, ὅπως, and ὥς, take the subjunctive after primary tenses, and the optative after secondary tenses. The negative is μή, which may be used alone, meaning *that not*, *lest*.

τῷ ἀνδρὶ πείσομαι, ἵνα εἰδῇτε, I will obey the man, that you may know,
1. 3. 15.

ἐπορευόμεν ἵνα ὠφελοίην, I went to help him, 1. 3. 4.

111. **Relative Clauses of Purpose.** [HA. 911; G. 1442; B. 591; Gl. 619.] A relative clause (negative μή) with the future indicative may express purpose.

ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν Κῦρον ὅστις . . . ἀπάξει, to ask a guide of Cyrus, who shall lead us back, 1. 3. 14.

112. Object Clauses. [HA. 885; G. 1372; B. 593; Gl. 638.] Object clauses after verbs meaning *strive for, care for, effect*, regularly take the future indicative after ὅπως and ὅπως μή.

βουλεύεται ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, he plans that he shall never again be in the power of his brother, 1. 1. 4.

N. Xenophon allows here the construction of final clauses.

ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι αὐτῷ μέλοι ὅπως καλῶς ἔχῃ, he replied that he was looking out that all should be well, 1. 8. 13.

113. Object Clauses after Verbs of Fearing. [HA. 887; G. 1378; B. 594; Gl. 610.] Verbs of fear, caution, or danger, after μή, *lest* (negative μὴ οὐ), take the subjunctive after primary tenses, and the optative or subjunctive after secondary tenses.

δέδοικα μὴ οὐκ ἔχω, I fear that I shall not have, 1. 7. 7.

οὐκ ἤθελε, φοβούμενος μὴ κυκλωθείη, he was unwilling, fearing lest he should be surrounded, 1. 8. 13.

CONDITIONS

114. Introductory. [HA. 889; G. 1381; B. 600; Gl. 645.]

(1) A conditional sentence usually consists of two parts, a conditional clause, called the condition or protasis, and a principal clause, called the conclusion or apodosis.

(2) **Negatives.** [HA. 1021; G. 1383; B. 600; Gl. 646.] The negative of the protasis is regularly μὴ; that of the apodosis is οὐ.

(3) The supposition contained in a protasis may be either *particular* or *general*. [HA. 890; G. 1384.] A **particular supposition** refers to a definite act or acts, occurring at some

definite time or times. A **general supposition** refers indefinitely to any act, occurring at any time.

Partic.: εἴπερ γε Δαρείου ἐστὶ παῖς, οὐκ ἀμαχεῖ ταῦτ' ἐγὼ λήψομαι,
if he is a child of Darius, I shall not take this without a battle,
1. 7. 9.

Gen.: εἰάν τις ταχὺ ἀνιστῇ, ἔστι λαμβάνειν, if one rouse them suddenly, it is (always) possible to catch (the bustards), 1. 5. 3.

115. Classification. Conditional sentences may be classified in two ways.

I. *Present*: 1. Particular; 2. General; 3. Unreal.

II. *Past*: 1. Particular; 2. General; 3. Unreal.

III. *Future*: 1. Vivid; 2. Vague.

I. Suppositions with Nothing Implied.

A. *Present*: 1. Particular; 2. General.

B. *Past*: 1. Particular; 2. General.

C. *Future*: 1. Vivid; 2. Vague.

II. Suppositions Contrary to Reality (implying that the condition is not or was not fulfilled).

D. *Unreal*: 1. Present; 2. Past.

N. The future makes no distinction in form between particular and general suppositions, and naturally does not imply anything as to fulfillment.

116. Particular Conditions. [HA. 893; G. 1390; B. 602; Gl. 647.] A Particular Condition simply states a present or past supposition implying nothing as to its probability. The protasis has *εἰ* with the indicative; the apodosis has any form of the verb.

Pres. Partic.: εἰ βούλεσθε συναπιέναι, ἦκειν ἤδη κελεύει, if you wish to go back with him, he bids you come at once, 2. 2. 1.

Past Partic.: ἦν ἀμήχανος εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι, εἴ τις ἐκώλυεν, it was difficult for an army to enter, if any one tried to prevent, 1. 2. 21.

117. General Conditions. [H.A. 894; G. 1393; B. 608-610; Gl. 650, 651.] A General Condition states what always happens (or happened) if the supposition of the protasis is (or was) ever fulfilled.

(a) Present general conditions regularly have *ἐάν* with the subjunctive in the protasis, and the present indicative or an equivalent in the apodosis.

ἐάν τις ταχὺ ἀνιστῇ, ἔστι λαμβάνειν, if one rouse them suddenly, it is possible to catch (the bustards), 1. 5. 3.

(b) Past general conditions have *εἰ* with the optative in the protasis, and the imperfect indicative (or some other form of past repetition) in the apodosis.

οὐκ ἦν λαβεῖν, εἰ μὴ οἱ ἵππεῖς θηρῶεν διαδεχόμενοι, it was impossible to catch (the ostriches), unless the horsemen hunted by relays, 1. 5. 2.

118. Conditions Contrary to Fact. [H.A. 895; G. 1397; B. 606; Gl. 649.] In Unreal Conditions the supposition of the protasis is contrary to the existing facts. The protasis has *εἰ* with the past tenses of the indicative; the apodosis has a potential indicative (107).

N. The imperfect denotes present time, the aorist past time.

εἰ μὴ ὑμεῖς ἦλθετε, ἐπορευόμεθα ἂν ἐπὶ βασιλέα, if you had not come, we should be on our way against the king, 2. 1. 4.

119. More Vivid Future (or Probable) Conditions. [H.A. 898; G. 1403; B. 604; Gl. 650.] The More Vivid Future Condition states what will (probably) happen if the supposition of the protasis is fulfilled.

The protasis has *ἐάν* (*ἤν*, *ἄν*) with the subjunctive; the apodosis has any form implying future time.

ἤν μὲν γὰρ ψηφίσωνται ἔπεσθαι, ὑμεῖς δόξετε αἴτιοι εἶναι, for if they vote to follow, you will be thought to be responsible, 1. 4. 15.

120. Less Vivid Future (or Possible) Condition. [HA. 900; G. 1408; B. 605; Gl. 651 (1).] The Less Vivid or Vague Future Condition states what would (possibly) happen, if the supposition of the protasis should be fulfilled.

The protasis has *εἰ* with the optative; the apodosis has a potential optative (106).

οὐδ' εἰ γενοίμην, ὦ Κῦρε, σοί γ' ἄν ποτε ἔτι δόξαιμι, not even if I should be, Cyrus, would I ever seem so again to you, 1. 6. 8.

121. Future of Warning. [HA. 899; G. 1405; cp. B. 602; Gl. 648.] The future indicative with *εἰ* is often used for the subjunctive in future conditions expressing a warning or a threat.

εἰ δέ πη τοῦτο ἔσται, τῇ ὅλῃ φάλαγγι κακὸν ἔσται, if this happens in any way, it will be bad for the whole line, 4. 8. 11.

122. Summary of Conditions.

TIME	FORM	PROTASIS	APODOSIS
PRESENT	<i>Particular</i>	Pres. Indic. with <i>εἰ</i>	Any form of verb
	<i>General</i>	Subj. with <i>εἰάν</i>	Pres. Indic. or equiv.
	<i>Unreal</i>	Imperf. with <i>εἰ</i>	Imperf. with <i>ἄν</i>
PAST	<i>Particular</i>	Past Indic. with <i>εἰ</i>	Past Indic.
	<i>General</i>	Opt. with <i>εἰ</i>	Impf. or equiv.
	<i>Unreal</i>	Aor. Indic. with <i>εἰ</i>	Aor. Indic. with <i>ἄν</i>
FUTURE	<i>Less Vivid</i>	Opt. with <i>εἰ</i>	Opt. with <i>ἄν</i>
	<i>More Vivid</i>	Subj. with <i>εἰάν</i>	Fut. Indic. or equiv.
	<i>Warning</i>	Fut. Indic. with <i>εἰ</i>	Fut. Indic.

123. Condition Unexpressed. [HA. 902; G. 1413; B. 614; Gl. 481.] A condition may be implied in a participle, adverb, or some other part of the sentence.

ἵεντο ὥσπερ ἂν δράμοι τις περὶ νίκης, they raced as one would run (if he should run) to win a victory, 1. 5. 8.

βουλοίμην δ' ἂν ἄκοντος ἀπὼν Κύρου λαθεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπελθών, I should prefer, if I went away without Cyrus's permission, to go away without his knowledge, 1. 3. 17.

124. Mixed Conditions. [HA. 901; G. 1421; B. 612.]

The protasis and apodosis sometimes belong to different forms.

οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν πολλαὶ γέφυραι ὧσιν ἔχοιμεν ἂν ὅποι φυγόντες ἡμεῖς σωθῶμεν, for not even if there (shall) be many bridges (vivid future), could we find a place to flee to and be safe (vague future), 2. 4. 19.

125. El with Verbs of Wondering. [HA. 926; G. 1423; B. 598. 1; Gl. 654.] Some words meaning *to wonder, be delighted, be indignant*, etc., are followed by a protasis with *εἰ*, instead of a causal clause with *ὅτι*.

θανμάζω δὲ τοῦτο εἴ τις μᾶλλον φοβερὸν νομίζει τῶν ἄλλων, I am surprised if (*i.e.* that) this is thought to be more dangerous than the other places, 6. 5. 19.

126. Definite Relative Clauses. [HA. 909; G. 1427; B. 619; Gl. 615.] A definite relative clause may take any form that is used in simple sentences. The relative refers to a definite person or thing, time, or place. The negative is *οὐ*.

συνέπεμψεν αὐτῇ τοὺς στρατιώτας οὓς Μένων εἶχε, he sent with her the soldiers which Menon had, 1. 2. 20.

127. Indefinite Relative Clauses. [HA. 912; G. 1428; B. 620; Gl. 616.] When the antecedent of a relative pronoun is indefinite (*i.e.* refers to an indefinite person or thing, time, or place), the relative clause has a conditional force, and may take the form of any of the conditions. The negative is *μή*.

N. If the form of the condition requires the subjunctive, the *άν* of *εάν* (= *εί άν*) must be used, as *επειδάν* [for *επειδή άν*] *ἀπιέναι βούληται*, whenever he wishes to go away, I. 4. 8.

128. Classification of Clauses. The most common forms of relative (or temporal) clauses are : —

I. *Pres. Partic.* : *ὅ τι βούλεται δώσω* (= *εἴ τι βούλεται*), whatever he wishes (now), I will give.

Past Partic. : *ὅστις δ' ἀφικνέιτο πρὸς αὐτόν, πάντας ἀπεπέμπετο*, whoever came to him, he sent away all, I. 1. 5.

Such clauses are more commonly general.

II. *Pres. Gen.* : *ἔως μὲν άν παρῇ χρῶμαι*, as long as he is present I use him, I. 4. 8.

Past Gen. : *(σταθμούς) μακροὺς ἤλανεν, ὅποτε πρὸς ὕδωρ βούλοιτο διατελέσαι* (= *εἴ ποτε βούλοιτο*), he made long marches, whenever he wished to get to water, I. 5. 7.

III. *Fut. Viv.* : *ὅ τι άν δέη πείσομαι* (= *εάν τι δέη*), I will suffer whatever shall be necessary, I. 3. 6.

Fut. Vag. : *ὀκνοῖν μὲν άν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα ἐμβαίνειν ἃ ἡμῖν δοίη* (= *εἴ τινα δοίη*), I should hesitate to embark on the boats which he should give us, I. 3. 17.

IV. *Unreal* : *ἃ μὴ ἐβούλετο δοῦναι, οὐκ άν ἔδωκεν*, whatever he did not wish to give, he would not have given.

Relative Clauses in the form of unreal conditions are rare.

129. Until Clauses. [HA. 921, 922; G. 1464, 1465; B. 626; Gl. 631.] When *ἔως*, *ἔσπε*, *ἄχρι*, *μέχρι*, and (after a negative) *πρίν* refer to a definite past action, they take the indicative, usually aorist. Otherwise they take the construction of conditional relatives.

130. Clauses with πρίν. [HA. 924; G. 1470; B. 627; Gl. 644, 568.] After an affirmative verb *πρίν* usually means *before* and is followed by the infinitive. After a negative verb, *πρίν* more commonly means *until*, and follows the construction of *ἔως* clauses.

διέβησαν πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι, they crossed before the others answered, 1. 4. 16.

οὔτε τότε . . . ἤθελε, πρὶν ἢ γυνὴ αὐτὸν ἔπεισε, nor then was he willing, until his wife persuaded him, 1. 2. 26.

δεῖται αὐτοῦ μὴ πρόσθεν καταλῦσαι . . . πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ συμβουλευῇται, he begged him not to make terms until he should advise with him, 1. 1. 10.

(ὑπέσχετο) αὐτοῖς μὴ πρόσθεν παύσασθαι πρὶν αὐτοὺς καταγάγοι οἴκαδε, he promised them not to stop until he should have restored them to their homes, 1. 2. 2.

131. Relative Clauses of Purpose and Result. Relative clauses may express also purpose (111) and result (133).

132. Result. [HA. 927; G. 1449, 1450; B. 595; Gl. 639.] Result clauses, introduced by ὥστε, take the indicative of a result actually attained, the infinitive of a result likely to be attained.

ἡ μήτηρ συνέπραττεν αὐτῷ ταῦτα · ὥστε βασιλεὺς τὴν ἐπιβουλὴν οὐκ ᾔσθάνετο, his mother coöperated with him in this; so that the king did not perceive the plot, 1. 1. 8.

ἔχω γὰρ τριήρεις ὥστε ἐλεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον, for I have triremes, so as to take their boat, 1. 4. 8.

N. Xenophon and some other writers use ὥς like ὥστε with the infinitive and finite moods.

συνέσπων ὥς μὴ ἄπτεσθαι τῆς κάρφης τὸ ὕδωρ, they sewed them together, so that the water should not touch the hay, 1. 5. 10.

133. Result may be expressed also by a relative clause with the indicative, or by a potential optative. [HA. 910; G. 1445; B. 597; Gl. 619.]

τίς οὕτω μαίνεται ὅστις οὐ βούλεται σοὶ φίλος εἶναι; who is so mad that he does not wish to be a friend to you? 2. 5. 12.

134. Causal Clauses. [HA. 925; G. 1505, 1506; B. 598; Gl. 622, 626, 627, 629.] Causal clauses, introduced

by *ὅτι* (διότι), *that, because*, *ἐπεὶ* (ἐπειδή) or *ὅτε*, *when, since*, *ὥς*, *as, since*, or a relative pronoun, regularly take the indicative.

μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλεπῶς φέρω, be not surprised that I am grieved,
1. 3. 3.

αἰσχυρόμενος ὅτι σύννοδα ἑμαυτῷ ἐψευσμένος αὐτόν, ashamed because I am conscious of having deceived him, 1. 3. 10.

N. (a) The optative may be used after a secondary tense on the principle of indirect discourse (140).

ὁ δ' ἐχαλέπαινε ὅτι πρῶτος λέγοι τὸ αὐτοῦ πάθος, he was angry because he (Proxenus) made light of his mishap, 1. 5. 14.

(b) For causal clauses with *εἰ* after *θαυμάζω*, see 125.

135. Indirect Discourse. [HA. 928; G. 1475; B. 668; Gl. 657.] A direct quotation gives the exact words of the original writer or speaker, as *I shall go to-morrow*. In an indirect quotation the original words are made to conform to the construction of the sentence in which they are quoted, as *he said that he should go to-morrow; he says that he shall go to-morrow*.

136. Indirect quotations may be expressed in three ways:—

by *ὅτι* or *ὥς* and a finite verb, as in English;

by the infinitive with subject accusative, as in Latin;

or by the supplementary participle (166).

137. Words of Saying. [HA. 946. b; G. 1523; B. 669; Gl. 658.]

Of the three common words meaning *say*,

φημί is followed by the infinitive;

εἶπον is followed by *ὅτι* or *ὥς* with a finite verb;

λέγω in the active usually takes *ὅτι* or *ὥς*, but in the passive usually takes the infinitive.

N. *εἶπον* meaning *command* takes the infinitive.

138. Words of Implied Saying. [HA. 946. b, 982; G. 1523; B. 669. 2; Gl. 658, 660.]

1. Words meaning *think* or *believe* (νομίζω, οἶμαι, δοκῶ, ἡγοῦμαι) take the infinitive.

2. Words meaning *know*, *perceive*, *see*, *hear*, with ἀγγέλλω, ἀννounce, and δηλός (or φανερός) εἶμι are more frequently followed by the participle.

N. These verbs may, however, take ὅτι or ὥς and a finite mood, and some allow the infinitive.

139. Caution. In changing from direct to indirect discourse the TENSE may NOT be changed.

140. Simple Sentences with ὅτι. [HA. 932; G. 1487; B. 670, 672, 673; Gl. 624.] Simple sentences introduced by ὅτι or ὥς more commonly retain the original mood, but after a secondary tense an indicative or subjunctive may be changed to the optative.

This change is never made when it could cause ambiguity.

λέγουσί τινες ὅτι πολλὰ ὑπισχνεῖ νῦν, some say that you promise a great deal now (they say πολλὰ ὑπισχνεῖ νῦν), 1. 7. 5.

ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἀκούει, he replied that he heard (he said ἀκούω), 1. 3. 20.

ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι αὐτῷ μέλοι, he answered that that was a care to him (he said ἐμοὶ μέλει), 1. 8. 13.

141. The Infinitive and Participle. [HA. 946; G. 1494; B. 671; Gl. 577-579.] After a word which takes the infinitive or participle, the verb of a simple sentence is changed to the infinitive or participle of the same tense.

N. If ἄν was used in the direct discourse, it is retained also in the indirect form.

ἀλλ' ἐγὼ φημι ταῦτα μὲν φλυναρίας εἶναι, but I say that this is folly (he said ταῦτα μὲν φλυναρίαι εἰσίν), 1. 3. 18.

ἐπειδὴ πεπτωκότα εἶδε Κῦρον, when he saw that Cyrus had fallen (direct form, πέπτωκε Κῦρος), 1. 8. 28.

σὺν ὑμῖν μὲν ἂν οἶμαι εἶναι τίμιος, with you I think that I should be honored (direct form, ἂν εἶην τίμιος), 1. 3. 6.

142. Complex Sentences in Indirect Discourse. [HA. 931; G. 1497; cp. B. 672, 673; Gl. 662.] When a complex sentence is indirectly quoted, the leading verb follows the rule for simple sentences (139-141). Dependent verbs retain the mood and tense after a primary tense; after a secondary tense they may change to the optative in the same tense. But to avoid confusion a past indicative is retained unchanged.

οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι ἂν μή τις αὐτοῖς χρήματα διδῶ, they said that they would not go unless money were given them, 1. 4. 12.

ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι αὐτῷ μέλοι ὅπως καλῶς ἔχοι, he replied that he was looking out that all should be well, 1. 8. 13.

ἔλεξεν ὅτι καλῶς ἂν εἶχεν εἰ τοῦτο ἔπραξε, he said that it would be well if he had done this.

143. Indirect Questions. [HA. 930, 932; G. 1479; B. 673; Gl. 661.] Indirect questions follow the rule of clauses introduced by ὅτι and ὥς.

καὶ ἤρετο τίς ὁ θόρυβος εἶη, and he asked what the noise was (he asked τίς ὁ θόρυβος ἐστι;), 1. 8. 16.

οἶδα γὰρ ὅπη οἴχονται, for I know where they have gone, 1. 4. 8.

144. The Infinitive. [HA. 938; G. 1516; B. 628; Gl. 562-564.] The infinitive is a neuter verbal noun (originally a dative). Like a verb it has voice and tense, may have a subject or object, and is qualified by adverbs (not adjectives).

N. (a) The tenses of the infinitive not in indirect discourse are chiefly the present and aorist, which do not differ in time.

(b) The negative of the infinitive is regularly μή, but in indirect discourse the negative of the direct quotation is retained.

145. Infinitive with the Article. [HA. 959; G. 1541; B. 636; Gl. 562. a.] As a neuter noun the infinitive may be modified by the article.

πρόφασις τοῦ ἀθροίζειν στρατεύμα, a pretext of raising an army, I. 1. 7.

N. Thus it will be seen that the infinitive corresponds to the Latin gerund:—

τὸ ἰδεῖν (videre),	seeing.
τοῦ ἰδεῖν (videndi),	of seeing.
τῷ ἰδεῖν (videndo),	to, for, by seeing.
τὸ ἰδεῖν (videndum, videre),	seeing.

146. Infinitive as Subject. [HA. 949; G. 1517, 1542; B. 637; Gl. 574.] The infinitive, with or without τό, may be the subject of a finite verb, a predicate nominative, or an appositive.

Συβῆ. : ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ βουλευέσθαι ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν, to me it seems best to deliberate as to what we must do, I. 3. 11.

Ἀρρὸς. : τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα βουλευομένους, ἀποσπῆναι πρὸς Κῦρον, forming this same plan, i.e. to go over to Cyrus, I. 1. 7.

N. The infinitive is very often the subject of an impersonal verb.

καὶ παρελθεῖν οὐκ ἦν, and it was not possible to pass by, I. 4. 4.

147. Infinitive as Object. [HA. 948; G. 1518, 1522, 1543; B. 638; Gl. 570.] The infinitive, with or without the article, is often the object of a verb.

ἐβούλετο τὸ παιδὲ ἀμφοτέρω παρῆναι, he wished both sons to be present, I. 1. 1.

οὐκ ἐθέλω ἐλθεῖν, I do not wish to go, I. 3. 10.

τὸ δὲ πειθομένους τοὺς στρατιώτας παρέχεσθαι ἐμμηχανᾶτο, he contrived to render his men obedient, 2. 6. 27.

N. The infinitive of indirect discourse (141) is really the object of a verb of saying, thinking, etc.

148. Complementary Infinitive. [HA. cp. 948; G. 1518; B. 638; cp. Gl. 570.] The object infinitive often has the

force of a cognate accusative (48). This is the so-called complementary infinitive.

οὐ δυνήσεται βιάσασθαι, he will be unable to force them, 1. 3. 2.

149. The Limiting Infinitive. [HA. 952; G. 1526, 1528; B. 641; Gl. 565.] The infinitive may be used to limit the meaning of adjectives, adverbs, and even nouns, especially those of ability, fitness, and the like.

πολεμῆν τε ἱκανοί, and able to fight, 1. 1. 5.

οὐχ ὥρα ἡμῖν καθενδῆν, 'tis not a time for us to sleep, 1. 3. 11.

150. Infinitive of Purpose. [HA. 951; G. 1532; B. 592 (640); Gl. 565.] The infinitive may express purpose.

τὴν χώραν ἐπέτρεψε διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἑλλησι, he gave over the land to the Greeks to plunder, 1. 2. 19.

151. Infinitive in the Genitive and Dative. [HA. 959; G. 1546, 1547; B. 639, 640; Gl. 575.] The genitive or dative of the infinitive with the article may follow a preposition, or stand in most of the noun constructions belonging to those cases.

πρόφασις τοῦ ἀθροΐζειν στρατεύμα, a pretext for raising an army, 1. 1. 7.
Μένων ἡγάλλετο τῷ ἑξαπατᾶν δύνασθαι, Menon delighted in being able to deceive, 2. 6. 26.

152. Adverbial Use of the Infinitive. [HA. 956; G. 1534, 1551; B. 642; Gl. 569.] The infinitive, with or without *τό*, may be used as an adverbial accusative.

ὥς σχολή ἢ ἡμῖν τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον εἶναι, that we may have leisure as far as this fellow is concerned, 1. 6. 9.

153. Infinitive with Words of Hindering. [HA. 963; G. 1549, 1550; B. 643; Gl. 572.]

Expressions of hindering may be followed by the simple infinitive (148),

the infinitive with τοῦ (151),
 the simple infinitive with μή,
 the infinitive with τοῦ μή,
 or the infinitive with τὸ μή (152).

If the word of hindering is negated, the infinitive may take the double negative μὴ οὐ instead of μή. Accordingly "He hinders me from going" may be expressed in any of the following ways:—

κωλύει με ἵνα (cp. τί κωλύει καὶ τὰ ἄκρα ἡμῖν κελεύειν Κύρον προκαταλαβεῖν, what hinders us from bidding Cyrus seize the height in advance for us? 1. 3. 16).

κωλύει με τοῦ ἵνα (cp. κωλύσειεν ἂν τοῦ καίειν, he would hinder from burning, 1. 6. 2).

κωλύει με μὴ ἵνα (cp. μικρὸν ἐξέφυγε μὴ καταπετρωθῆναι, he narrowly escaped being stoned to death, 1. 3. 2).

κωλύει με τοῦ μὴ ἵνα.

κωλύει με τὸ μὴ ἵνα.

(Negative)

οὐ κωλύει με μὴ οὐκ ἵνα.

οὐ κωλύει με τὸ μὴ οὐκ ἵνα.

154. Infinitive with ὥστε and πρίν. The infinitive is used with ὥστε of intended result (132) and with πρίν, *before* (130).

155. Participles. [HA. 938; G. 1557; B. 648, 649; Gl. 580.] Participles are verb adjectives. Like other adjectives they agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. The uses of the participle may be classed under three general heads, attributive (156–157), circumstantial (158–162), and supplementary (163–166).

156. Attributive Participle. [HA. 965; G. 1559; B. 650; Gl. 582.] The participle, with or without the article, may modify a noun like an attributive adjective.

Δάνα, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, Dana, an inhabited city, I. 2. 20.

ἀπέπεμπε τοὺς γιγνομένους δασμούς, he sent in the taxes which accrued, I. 1. 8.

157. Substantive Participle. [HA. 966; G. 1560; B. 650. 1; Gl. 582. a.] The noun with an attributive participle may be omitted, the participle itself taking the place of a noun. In both the attributive and substantive use the participle may often be rendered by *he* or *those who* and a finite verb.

οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες, the inhabitants, I. 2. 24.

οἱ παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν οἰκοῦντες, those who dwell along the sea, I. 2. 24.

158. Circumstantial Participle. [HA. 968; G. 1563; B. 652; Gl. 583.] The participle may define the circumstances of an action. It is best rendered in English by a clause or phrase expressing time, means, cause, manner, etc.

ὥς ἀπῆλθε κινδυνεύσας, when he went away after incurring danger, I. 1. 4.

159. Circumstantial Participle. [HA. 969; G. 1563; B. 653; Gl. 583.] The circumstantial participle may express the following relations:—

1. *Time*: τοῦτον διαβὰς ἐξελαύνει, after crossing this he marched on, I. 2. 6.
2. *Cause*: ἡξίου ἀδελφὸς ὦν αὐτοῦ δοθῆναι οἱ ταύτας τὰς πόλεις, he demanded, since he was his brother, that these cities be given to him, I. 1. 8.
3. *Means*: ἀνταγοράζοντες σῖτον ἔζων, they lived by buying food in exchange (for millstones), I. 5. 5.
4. *Manner*: δύναμιν ἡθροίζεν ὥς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο ἐπικρυπτόμενος, he assembled a force as secretly as possible, I. 1. 6.
5. *Purpose*: ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἀνίσταντο λέγοντες, thereupon they rose to say, I. 3. 13.

6. *Condition* : οὐ γὰρ ἦν πρὸς τοῦ Κύρου τρόπον ἔχοντα μὴ ἀποδιδόναι, for it was not in accordance with Cyrus's character not to pay if he had (money), 1. 2. 11.

7. *Concession* : ταῦτα πεποιηκὼς οὐκ ἀπέθανε, though he had done the same, he was not put to death, 2. 6. 29.

8. *Any Attendant Circumstance* : ἐθεώρει τοὺς Ἑλληνας, παρελαύνων ἐφ' ἄρματος, he reviewed the Greeks, riding along in a chariot, 1. 2. 16.

N. ἔχων (φέρων, ἄγων, λαβών, χρώμενος) may often be rendered *with*. Κῦρος δὲ ἔχων οὓς εἶρηκα, Cyrus with those I have mentioned, 1. 2. 5. Ξενίας μὲν δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων λαβὼν παρεγένετο, Xenias came with the men from the cities, 1. 2. 3.

160. *Genitive Absolute*. [HA. 970; G. 1568; B. 657; Gl. 589.] The circumstantial participle may stand in the genitive with a word not grammatically connected with the rest of the sentence.

N. The genitive absolute expresses most of the relations of the simple circumstantial participle.

Cause : οὐδὲν ἤχθετο αὐτῶν πολεμούντων, he was not angry that they were fighting, 1. 1. 8.

Concession : καὶ μεταπεμπομένου αὐτοῦ οὐκ ἐθέλω ἐλθεῖν, and though he keeps sending for me I will not go, 1. 3. 10.

Attendant Circumstances : ἐντεῦθεν προΐόντων (sc. αὐτῶν) ἐφαίνετο ἵχνη ἵππων, as they were going on from there, tracks of horses appeared, 1. 6. 1.

161. *Accusative Absolute*. [HA. 973; G. 1569; B. 658; Gl. 591.] Instead of the genitive absolute the accusative is used when the participle is impersonal.

ἐξὸν δὲ ῥαθυμεῖν βούλεται πονεῖν, though it is possible to live a life of ease, he prefers to toil, 2. 6. 6.

162. *Adjuncts of the Participle*. [HA. 977-979; G. 1573-1575; B. 656; Gl. 593.] Certain particles show more clearly the relation of the circumstantial participle to the rest of the sentence.

ἄτε, *inasmuch as*, shows the participle to be causal.

τὰ ὑποζύγια, ἄτε διὰ στενῆς τῆς ὁδοῦ πορευόμενα, *inasmuch as the road through which the pack-animals were going was narrow*, 4. 2. 13.

καίπερ shows that the participle is concessive.

καίπερ εἰδότες ὅτι ἐπὶ θάνατον ἄγοιτο, *although they knew that he was being led to death*, 1. 6. 10.

ὥς with a participle of cause or purpose shows that the statement of the participle is the thought of some person mentioned in the context and not necessarily that of the speaker or writer.

συλλαμβάνει Κῦρον ὥς ἀποκτενῶν, *he arrested Cyrus with the intention of killing him*, 1. 1. 3.

τὴν χώραν ἐπέτρεψε διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἑλλήσιν ὥς πολεμίαν οὔσαν, *he gave over the land to the Greeks to plunder on the ground that it was hostile*, 1. 2. 19.

163. Supplementary Participle. [HA. 980; G. 1578; B. 659; Gl. 584.] A predicate participle may be used to complete the idea expressed by the verb, by showing to what the action relates. It may belong either to the subject or to the predicate and agrees in case, as πανόμεθα λέγοντες, *we stop speaking*, or παύομέν σε λέγοντα, *we stop you speaking*.

164. The supplementary participle is used with verbs meaning *begin, continue, cease, be weary, be pleased, or displeased*, and the like. [HA. 981; B. 660; G. 1580; Gl. 585.]

ὁ δὲ ἐλπίδας λέγων διῆγε, *he continually expressed hope*, 1. 2. 11.

165. The supplementary participle with λανθάνω, *escape the notice of*, τυγχάνω, *happen*, and φθάνω, *anticipate*, contains the main idea. It is often translated by a verb, while the verb is rendered by an adverb. [HA. 984; G. 1586; B. 660; Gl. 585. a.]

ὁ μὲν οὖν πρεσβύτερος παρὼν ἐτύγχανε, now the elder chanced to be present, 1. 1. 2.

τρεφόμενον ἐλάιθανεν αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα, the army was secretly maintained for him, 1. 1. 9.

166. Indirect Discourse. [HA. 982; G. 1588; B. 661; Gl. 586.] The supplementary participle of indirect discourse is used with many verbs of *knowing*, *perceiving*, *hearing*, *remembering*, and the like.

N. Each tense of the participle represents the corresponding tense of a finite mood. The participle agrees with either subject or object.

ἤκουσε Κῦρον ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ὄντα, he heard that Cyrus was in Cilicia, 1. 4. 5.

σύνοιδα ἐμαντῶ πάντα ἐψευσμένος αὐτόν, I am conscious that I have deceived him in everything, 1. 3. 10.

167. Verbal Adjectives. [HA. 988; G. 1594; B. 633; Gl. 596.] The verbal adjective in -τέος is passive in meaning and expresses necessity (like the Latin *gerundive*). As a predicate after εἰμί (which is often omitted) it has a personal and an impersonal construction. In either case the agent is expressed by the dative (84).

168. In the personal construction the verbal adjective agrees with the subject of the sentence, like any predicate adjective. [HA. 989; G. 1595; B. 664; Gl. 596. a.]

ποταμὸς ἡμῖν ἐστι διαβατέος, a river is to be crossed by us, 2. 4. 6.

The impersonal construction would be ποταμὸν ἡμῖν ἐστι διαβατέον.

169. In the impersonal construction the verbal adjective is in the neuter singular (sometimes plural), and may take an object. [HA. 990; G. 1597; B. 665; Gl. 596. b.]

ἐμοὶ τοῦτο οὐ ποιητέον, I must not do this, 1. 3. 15.

πορευτέον δ' ἡμῖν τοὺς πρώτους σταθμοὺς ὡς μακροτάτους, we must make the first days' marches as long as possible, 2. 2. 12.

170. The verbal adjective in *-τός* is equivalent to a perfect passive participle or an adjective of capability. [HA. 475; G. 776; B. 667; Gl. 411.]

N. Many verbals in *τός* are used regularly as adjectives.

οὗτος ὁ ποταμὸς διαβατός, this river is passable, I. 4. 18.

τάφρος ἦν ὀρυκτὴ βαθεῖα, there was a deep artificial (dugged) ditch, I. 7. 14.

171. Negatives. [HA. 1018–1025; G. 1607–1613; B. 431; cp. Gl. 486.] Of the two negative adverbs, *οὐ* is used with the indicative and optative in all independent sentences except wishes, in causal sentences, and in indirect discourse with *ὅτι* and *ὥς*.

μή is used with the subjunctive and imperative in all constructions; in all final and object clauses (except after *μή*, *lest*, which takes *οὐ*). It is used in all conditional clauses, and in relative and temporal clauses implying a condition, and in wishes. *μή* is used with the infinitive, except in indirect discourse, and with the conditional participle.

172. Double Negatives. [HA. 1030–1031; G. 1618, 1619; B. 433; Gl. 487.] When a negative is followed by a simple negative in the same clause, each retains its force. If they belong to the same word or expression, they make an affirmative. But when a negative is followed by one or more compound negatives, the negation is strengthened.

εἰ μὴ Πρόξενον οὐχ ὑπεδέξαντο, if they had not refused to receive (not not received) Proxenus.

οὐδεὶς οὐκ ἔπασché τι, (there was) no one (who) was not affected, i.e. every one was affected.

οὐδ' ἄλλος δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς οὐδέν, nor did any other of the Greeks suffer anything at all, I. 8. 20. See also 105 and 153.

GREEK COMPOSITION

EXERCISE I. [Anab. I. I. 1, 2.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Darius¹ had² two sons. 2. Cyrus and Artaxerxes are² sons³ of Darius.⁴ 3. Artaxerxes⁵ is the older³ of the (two) boys.⁶ 4. The younger⁶ is Cyrus. 5. Darius the king⁷ falls-ill. 6. He wishes his⁸ sons to-be-with-him. 7. Accordingly he summons both⁹ boys. 8. The elder⁵ brother is already at hand. 9. But Cyrus⁵ was-off in his⁸ province. 10. For Cyrus was satrap of a province.¹⁰ 11. He was general also of many soldiers.¹⁰ 12. So he came-up from his⁸ province. 13. Cyrus took-with-him Xenias with¹¹ many hoplites. 14. This¹² Xenias was commander³ of three hundred Greeks.¹⁰

EXERCISE II. [Anab. I. I. 3, 4.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Darius¹³ had made Cyrus¹⁴ a satrap.¹⁴ 2. Now Artaxerxes comes¹⁵ to the throne.

¹ 13. Metaphrase: *To Darius were two sons,* 83.

² 5.

³ 7.

⁴ 56.

⁶ Notice in the text the use of *μέν* and *δέ*.

μέν is used with a word or phrase to imply a contrast with a similar word or phrase which follows.

⁶ 63.

⁷ 8.

⁸ 14.

⁹ 22.

¹⁰ 59.

¹¹ Use *ἔχων* in the proper case, 159.

¹² 20.

¹³ 13.

¹⁴ 55.

¹⁵ In this tense the middle must be used.

3. For Darius had died. 4. Tissaphernes is-plotting-against Cyrus.¹ 5. He falsely-accuses Cyrus to his brother. 6. So he² sent-for Cyrus³ at once. 7. For he wished to arrest⁴ him. 8. Artaxerxes arrested his⁵ brother. 9. But the lad's mother begged him off. 10. She will send him back to his⁵ province. 11. He does not wish to be in⁶ Tissaphernes' power.⁶ 12. Will he be king instead of his⁵ brother? 13. His⁵ mother does not favor the king.⁷ 14. But she loves the younger brother. 15. Cyrus loves Parysatis, his mother.⁸ 16. For, you know,⁹ she always favored him.⁷

EXERCISE III. [Anab. I. I. 5, 6.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Cyrus arrived¹⁰ at¹¹ his province. 2. All¹² the barbarians were friendly to him.¹³ 3. He sends them back to the Great King.¹⁴ 4. For he wished them to be friendly¹⁵ to his brother.¹³ 5. A Greek force is collected by Cyrus.¹⁶ 6. He is able to make a levy in his province. 7. For he had garrisons in many cities. 8. The commanders of those¹⁷ garrisons¹⁸ were Peloponnesians. 9. They were also well-disposed¹⁹ to Cyrus.¹³ 10. So he sent-for them from their cities. 11. The king once gave Tissaphernes²⁰ the Ionian cities.

¹ 94.² 27. n.³ Not a dative. See text.⁴ 147.⁶ 14.⁶ *In the power of*, one word.⁷ 80.⁸ 8.⁹ *You know*, δὲ, post-positive.¹⁰ Use the aorist.¹¹ εἰς.¹² 26.¹³ 93.¹⁴ 15.¹⁵ What case?¹⁶ 76.¹⁷ 20.¹⁸ 59.¹⁹ Use the idiom of the text. Remember that ἐχω with an adverb may often be rendered *be*.²⁰ 79.

12. But now they are going-over¹ to Cyrus. 13. The several² cities were well-disposed to Cyrus. 14. But not all were able to fight.

EXERCISE IV. [Anab. I. I. 7.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. The men³ in Miletus are plotting the same thing. 2. They were planning to revolt from the king.⁴ 3. Some⁵ flee, others⁵ plot against the cities. 4. He puts some to death, others he banishes. 5. For they are trying to besiege Miletus. 6. Cyrus besieges the city by sea. 7. He has⁶ this⁷ pretext. 8. All⁸ the Ionian cities were friendly to Tissaphernes.⁹ 9. This⁷ Tissaphernes wishes to kill Cyrus. 10. For formerly his¹⁰ province was well-disposed to Cyrus.⁹ 11. Cyrus will receive the exiles and raise an army. 12. But he will not take the king unaware. 13. For he has already made a levy. 14. And he will send-for both² his¹¹ armies.

EXERCISE V. [Anab. I. I. 1-7.]

Study carefully the examples under the Summary of Grammar, I-11.

Written Exercise. — A Greek king¹² had two generals, one⁵ of whom was good, the other⁵ bad. Once, when the king was ill, he sent for both² generals. So Cyrus, the good (one),¹³ came to him at once; for he was well-disposed to the king¹⁴ and liked him. But Xenias, the

¹ *Going-over*, present middle of ἀφ-ίστημι.

² 22.

³ 11.

⁴ 68.

⁵ 27.

⁶ Cp. I. 1.

⁷ 20.

⁸ 26.

⁹ Cp. III. 2.

¹⁰ Use ἐκεῖνος.

¹¹ 14.

¹² Cp. IV. 7.

¹³ Omit.

¹⁴ Cp. IV. 10.

other, did not care to be¹ in the king's power.² Accordingly he did not obey, but fled to his province. For the former³ king had made him satrap,⁴ and had given him⁵ a large army.

Cyrus's force⁶ mustered in⁷ the plain of Castolus. Now both armies were⁸ devoted to their⁹ leaders; but the hoplites of Xenias were not competent to fight.¹⁰ So the king summoned the runaway¹¹ and arrested him. Xenias wished Cyrus to beg him off, but the king put him to death and banished his men.¹²

EXERCISE VI. [Anab. I. I. 8.]

For Oral Translation.—1. Tissaphernes ruled-over the Ionian cities.¹³ 2. Cyrus did not wish him¹⁴ to rule-over them. 3. So he kept-sending to the king about it. 4. "I wish to rule those myself,¹⁵" he said. 5. Will his mother coöperate-with him¹⁶ in this¹⁷? 6. Tissaphernes perceives the plot against the king. 7. Cyrus was not fighting the men¹⁸ in Miletus. 8. He was spending-money on¹⁹ armies. 9. But he sends-in the tribute from his province. 10. He plotted-against the cities¹⁶ which²⁰ Tissaphernes held. 11. He will rule the cities which²¹ his brother holds. 12. The armies were besieging⁸ the cities by land.²²

¹ 147.

² Cp. II. 11.

³ Use ἀρχαῖος.

⁴ 55.

⁵ Not acc.

⁶ Metaphrase: *The of the Cyrus force.*

⁷ Use εἰς and the acc., as the verb implies motion.

⁸ 6.

⁹ 14.

¹⁰ The infinitive as in English, 149.

¹¹ 11.

¹² *His men*, τοὺς αὐ-
τοῦ.

¹³ 64.

¹⁴ 3.

¹⁵ 32.

¹⁶ 94.

¹⁷ 49.

¹⁸ 92; 11.

¹⁹ *On*, cp. text.

²⁰ 42.

²¹ 42, but what case?

²² Cp. IV. 6.

13. Cyrus besieges the town both by land and by sea.
 14. But the king kept-demanding¹ the tribute.

EXERCISE VII. [Anab. I. I. 9.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Cyrus admires Clearchus, a Lacedaemonian exile.² 2. He became-acquainted-with him³ in Abydus. 3. And he gave him⁴ a-large-sum-of⁵ money. 4. So Clearchus collected another army for Cyrus.⁶ 5. Most⁷ of the Thracians were-at-war-with the Greeks.⁸ 6. So the Greeks willingly contributed money. 7. They always contribute money for⁹ the support of the armies.¹⁰ 8. Both¹¹ armies¹² were mustered in the Chersonese. 9. These¹³ armies were being raised for Cyrus.⁶ 10. For he wished to be king instead of his brother. 11. And he did not wish the king¹⁴ to give Tissaphernes⁴ the cities. 12. Those¹³ cities favored Cyrus.¹⁵ 13. For they loved him more than Tissaphernes.¹⁶

EXERCISE VIII. [Anab. I. I. 10, 11.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Clearchus¹⁷ was a Lacedaemonian, Aristippus¹⁷ a Thessalian. 2. The one¹⁸ was an exile, the other¹⁸ a guest-friend of Cyrus. 3. Aristippus was hard-pressed by his opponents at home. 4. So he asked Cyrus¹⁹ for troops¹⁹ and money.¹⁹ 5. For he wished to get-

¹ Impf.⁷ 24.¹⁸ 20.² 8.⁸ 92.¹⁴ 3.³ 94.⁹ Notice the idiom in the text.¹⁵ 80.⁴ 79.¹⁰ Is this genitive subjective or objective?¹⁶ What case?⁵ *A-large-sum-of*, use πολὺς.¹⁷ Cp. I. 3 and 4.⁶ 82.¹¹ 22.¹⁸ 27. n.¹² 6.¹⁹ 53.

the-better-of his opponents.¹ 6. Accordingly Cyrus gave him money for the support of² his mercenaries. 7. He asked for three months'³ pay. 8. Cyrus gave him five months'³ pay for⁴ two thousand men. 9. He did not, however, get-the-better-of his enemies.¹ 10. For the Pisidians kept-disturbing⁵ his province.⁶ 11. So he has not made terms with⁷ his opponents. 12. Proxenus⁸ also had⁸ an army at home. 13. Cyrus asked him to take-the-field⁹ against the Pisidians. 14. With-the-aid-of¹⁰ Aristippus he raised a large¹¹ army.

EXERCISE IX. [Anab. I. 2. I.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Cyrus resolves¹² to march inland. 2. The Pisidians wish to drive him from their land. 3. Both¹³ the leaders collect armies. 4. Cyrus assembles both Greek and barbarian (troops).¹⁴ 5. Clearchus, too, came with his¹⁵ force. 6. And Aristippus makes terms with¹⁶ his opponents. 7. He no longer¹⁷ fought with those¹⁸ at home. 8. Xenias the Arcadian was another friend of Cyrus.¹⁹ 9. He came with²⁰ the mercenaries from the cities. 10. These²¹ generals Cyrus ordered to come

¹ 71.

² *For the support of*, see VII. 7.

³ 62.

⁴ *For*, *els*.

⁵ *Kept-disturbing: were causing trouble to.*

⁶ 79.

⁷ *Made terms with*, see idiom of text.

⁸ Recast as in I. 1.

⁹ *To-take-the-field*, one word.

¹⁰ *With-the-aid-of*, one word.

¹¹ *Large*, use *πολύς*.

¹² *Cyrus resolves: it seems best to Cyrus.*

¹³ 22.

¹⁴ Omit.

¹⁵ *His: the of himself*, 18.

¹⁶ Cp. text, § 1.

¹⁷ οὐκέτι.

¹⁸ 11; 92.

¹⁹ *Was another friend of Cyrus: was also friendly to Cyrus.*

²⁰ *With*, ἐχων, 159.

²¹ 20.

to him. 11. And they willingly¹ sent what troops they had.² 12. Thus he raised the armies avowedly³ against the Pisidians. 13. But in reality⁴ he was-plotting-against his brother.⁵

EXERCISE X. [Anab. I. I. 8-2. I.]

Study carefully the examples under the Summary of Grammar, 12-27.

Written Exercise. — Beyond the Chersonese lived a king who had⁶ two sons. To the elder,⁷ Aristippus, the king gave three cities; but the younger,⁷ Proxenus, with⁸ his mother's help⁸ plotted-against his brother⁵; for he wished to have these⁹ cities himself.¹⁰ And his brother's soldiers coöperated-with him⁵ in this,¹¹ for they loved him more than his brother.¹² But the tribute accruing¹³ from the cities was sent to Aristippus.

Soon, however, Clearchus the exile came to the country; for his¹⁴ opponents at home had driven him from the land. Now both¹⁵ brothers admired Clearchus, and gave him¹⁶ money. And he collected with these funds both Greek troops and barbarians.¹⁷ For he resolved¹⁸ with-the-aid-of⁸ the king's sons to-get-rid-of his opponents. But the king bade him march inland avowedly³ against the Thracians.

¹ Cp. VII. 6.

² Recast: *what they had troops.*

³ *Avowedly*, ὡς.

⁴ *In reality*, τῷ ὄντι.

⁵ 94.

⁶ *Who had:* *to whom was*, 83.

⁷ Cp. VIII. 1.

⁸ *With-the-help-of*, one word.

⁹ 20.

¹⁰ 32.

¹¹ 49.

¹² What case?

¹³ Use the present participle of

γίγνομαι.

¹⁴ 14.

¹⁵ 22.

¹⁶ Not acc.

¹⁷ Cp. IX. 4.

¹⁸ Cp. IX. 1.

EXERCISE XI. [Anab. i. 2. 2, 3.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. And he summons also¹ the Greeks from the cities. 2. But the exiles did not take-the-field-with him. 3. All² the Greek generals trusted Cyrus.³ 4. And he, too,⁴ had-confidence-in all² the generals.³ 5. He wished, moreover, to restore them to their homes.⁵ 6. Xenias and Clearchus reported at⁶ Sardis with⁷ their troops. 7. Socrates promised me⁸ something. 8. But he ordered you to take-the-field-with him.⁹ 9. Come with⁷ as¹⁰ many men as possible.¹⁰ 10. I will¹⁰ report at Sardis with my hoplites. 11. I shall take about fifteen hundred¹¹ peltasts. 12. The leader of the hoplites obeys Cyrus.³ 13. He will succeed in this.¹² 14. Both¹³ the armies have-confidence-in Xenias.³

EXERCISE XII. [Anab. i. 2. 4, 5.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Three armies came¹⁴ to Sardis for Cyrus.¹⁵ 2. In-all there were¹⁶ many thousand troops. 3. But Tissaphernès perceived these (preparations).¹⁷ 4. He went as-quickly-as-possible to¹⁸ the king. 5. Thus the king hears of Cyrus's expedition. 6. The preparation

¹ Metaphrase: *Summons-he and also the from the cities Greeks.* Notice in the text that *δέ* precedes *καί*.

² 26.

³ 80.

⁴ Cp. No. 1, above.

⁵ *To-their-homes*, one word.

⁶ *Reported at:* *were present into.*

⁷ Cp. I. 13.

⁸ 79; 30.

⁹ 34.

¹⁰ Cp. text, I. 1. 6.

¹¹ *Fifteen hundred*, how expressed in text?

¹² *Succeed in this:* *accomplish this well.*

¹³ 22.

¹⁴ 6.

¹⁵ 82.

¹⁶ *In all there were:* *all were.*

¹⁷ Omit.

¹⁸ Notice the preposition in the text. *ὧς* is used only with personal objects.

which I have mentioned is very great. 7. All the armies set out from Sardis. 8. You¹ also heard this² from Cyrus.² 9. He will hear it² from the king² himself.³ 10. On the same³ day⁴ they marched through Lydia. 11. The Maeander river itself³ is in Lydia. 12. Five hundred horsemen marched to the Maeander river. 13. There was a bridge on this⁵ river.⁶ 14. That⁵ bridge was-made-of seven boats.⁷

EXERCISE XIII. [Anab. i. 2. 6, 7.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Cyrus crossed this⁵ river. 2. There were seven bridges on that⁵ river.⁶ 3. They crossed it by-means-of-boats.⁸ 4. Then he marched one parasang⁹ to a¹⁰ large city. 5. The Greeks remained one day⁹ in the prosperous city.¹¹ 6. Menon the Thessalian had a large army.¹² 7. He had both¹³ hoplites and¹³ peltasts. 8. Some¹⁴ of the men¹⁵ were Dolopians, others¹⁴ Olynthians. 9. Menon and his men¹⁶ arrived at¹⁷ Celaenae. 10. They came to a park full of wild animals. 11. This park was in Celaenae. 12. Cyrus liked to exercise both himself and his men.¹⁶ 13. The Maeander is a beautiful stream. 14. There is a pontoon¹⁸ bridge on it, made of twenty boats.¹⁸

¹ 29.

² The acc. of the thing and gen.
(69) of the person.

³ 32.

⁴ 95.

⁵ 20.

⁶ 94.

⁷ Metaphrase: *had been joined by*
(means of) *seven boats.*

⁸ 86.

⁹ 51.

¹⁰ 28.

¹¹ 96.

¹² Recast the sentence.

¹³ *Both, and, τε καί.*

¹⁴ 27. n.

¹⁵ 63.

¹⁶ 11.

¹⁷ Cp. XI. 6.

¹⁸ Cp. text, 2. 5. Metaphrase: *A bridge but is-upon it, twenty having-been-joined by-boats.*

EXERCISE XIV. [Anab. 1. 2. 8, 9.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. The king had¹ a palace in the city. 2. Xerxes built both² that palace and² the acropolis. 3. There is an acropolis also³ in Colossae. 4. There Xerxes had¹ a fortified castle. 5. He had¹ both a castle and a park. 6. He raised many armies in Lydia. 7. But he was beaten in⁴ the battle. 8. Then he retreated to the source⁵ of the Marsyas river. 9. It was there⁶ that Apollo flayed Marsyas. 10. For he⁷ contested with him⁸ once in⁹ musical-skill. 11. Apollo hung-up Marsyas' skin in a¹⁰ cave. 12. That is why¹¹ the river was called Marsyas. 13. The river's width is twenty-five feet.¹² 14. This river is twenty-five feet¹² in width.¹³

EXERCISE XV. [Anab. 1. 2. 2-8.]

Study carefully the examples under the Summary of Grammar, 28-36.

Written Exercise. — The Greeks once were-making-an-expedition against Miletus. They summoned¹⁴ many mercenaries from the Great King's¹⁵ cities, for the king himself promised to send¹⁶ them¹⁷ a large army. For he had confidence in them¹⁸ because¹⁹ they drove-out the Pisidians for him.²⁰

¹ 6; 83.

² Cp. XIII. 7.

³ Cp. XI. 1.

⁴ Omit, as in text.

⁵ *Source*, use the plural.

⁶ *It was there that: there.*

⁷ Emphatic, οὗτος.

⁸ 92; 32. 3.

⁹ See the preposition used in text.

¹⁰ 28.

¹¹ *That is why: on account of this.*

¹² 62.

¹³ 49.

¹⁴ Connect this sentence with the preceding by δέ, post-positive.

¹⁵ 15.

¹⁶ *To send*, use the future infinitive.

¹⁷ 79.

¹⁸ Cp. XI. 14.

¹⁹ *Because*, διότι.

²⁰ 82.

Accordingly four armies reported¹ to the king² at Sardis. Clearchus the exile did not come; but all the others assembled in Sardis.³ The king thereupon sent to Tissaphernes a dispatch:—

“I⁴ am your⁵ king, you⁴ are my⁵ general. Send me⁶ then four thousand peltasts. For those⁷ Pisidians have started from their⁸ country; they have crossed the river, and are now in Colossae, a large town. They wish to stay in Lydia. So come to Sardis with⁹ a force of both hoplites¹⁰ and cavalry.” So Tissaphernes obeyed the king¹¹ and came at once with his men.¹²

EXERCISE XVI. [Anab. 1. 2. 9, 10.]

For Oral Translation.—1. Those-who-flee¹³ are called fugitives.¹⁴ 2. Who¹⁵ was beaten in the battle? 3. Was anyone¹⁶ defeated there? 4. Cyrus and his army remained¹⁷ in the park. 5. They hunted the beasts of which¹⁸ the park was full. 6. Many of the beasts¹⁹ which²⁰ they hunted were large. 7. Cyrus,²¹ who¹⁵ are present¹⁷ with⁹ troops? 8. Clearchus is holding a review. 9. An enumeration of the Greeks is made. 10. Xenias wishes to hold²² (some)²³ sports. 11. He will institute games in Peltae. 12. Cyrus will give the men⁶ prizes. 13. Will you witness the contest, Cyrus? 14. I will,²⁴ and I will give as²³ prizes²⁵ golden strigils. 15. I will give what²⁶ you ask.

¹ Cp. XI. 6.

² 82.

³ Cp. V. note 7.

⁴ 29.

⁵ 35.

⁶ 79.

⁷ 20.

⁸ 33.

⁹ Cp. I. 13.

¹⁰ 61.

¹¹ 80.

¹² Cp. XIII. 9.

¹³ 37.

¹⁴ 7.

¹⁵ 38.

¹⁶ 39.

¹⁷ 5.

¹⁸ 40; 65.

¹⁹ 63.

²⁰ 42.

²¹ 45.

²² 147.

²³ Omit.

²⁴ Sc. *witness*.

²⁵ 8.

²⁶ 41.

EXERCISE XVII. [Anab. I. 2. 11, 12.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. After the contest Cyrus and the army marched-on twenty parasangs.¹ 2. They arrived at Peltae,² a fine, large city. 3. Here they stayed three days.¹ 4. And many times the troops demanded pay³ of Cyrus.³ 5. But he had⁴ no money for them. 6. They often went to Cyrus's quarters. 7. He was troubled, for he wished to pay them.⁵ 8. Then the wife of the Cilician king arrived. 9. She gave Cyrus⁵ a large-sum-of-money.⁶ 10. A Cilician-lady, Epyaxa by name,⁷ was-present. 11. The woman was called 'Epyaxa.⁸ 12. The people called the king⁹ of the Cilicians Syennesis.⁹ 13. Cyrus had guards about him.¹⁰ 14. The guards about the woman were Cilicians.¹¹

EXERCISE XVIII. [Anab. I. 2. 13, 14.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Thymbrium was an inhabited city. 2. There by the roadside was a beautiful fountain. 3. Near¹² this¹³ fountain Midas captured the Satyr. 4. Here once dwelt a Satyr, Midas by name.⁷ 5. The Greeks called the Satyr Midas.⁹ 6. He mixed the (water of the)¹⁴ spring with wine.¹⁵ 7. For five days¹⁶ the soldiers kept-coming to the fountain. 8. They often used-to-demand¹⁷ wine of Cyrus.¹⁸ 9. Many months'¹⁹ pay was due them.²⁰ 10. Cyrus was able to pay the men in-the-following-

¹ 51.² Cp. XIII. 9.³ 53.⁴ Express in two ways.⁶ No acc.⁶ *A large sum of money: much money.*⁷ 49.⁸ Cp. 55. n.⁹ 55.¹⁰ 33.¹¹ 7.¹² Use ἐπὶ.¹³ 20.¹⁴ Omit.¹⁵ 86.¹⁶ Not dat.¹⁷ What tense?¹⁸ Not gen., 53.¹⁹ 62.²⁰ 79.

manner.¹ 11. The Cilician-queen wished him to show her² his troops. 12. So he held a review of the whole³ army. 13. Finally¹ she said, "You⁴ have⁵ no money. 14. I⁴ will give the men their⁶ pay."

EXERCISE XIX. [Anab. i. 2. 15, 16.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. The Greeks are drawn up in the following manner.⁷ 2. And each leader arranges⁸ his own men. 3. Menon⁹ drew up his men four deep. 4. But Clearchus⁹ ordered his troops to form for¹⁰ battle. 5. Who held the left wing of the Greeks? 6. A fugitive, Clearchus by name,¹¹ held the right wing. 7. Cyrus had appointed him general.¹² 8. Cyrus reviews his own¹³ army first. 9. Then the Greeks marched-past. 10. He held the review in the middle¹⁴ of the plain. 11. The queen wished to see the Greek¹⁵ line. 12. The Cilician-lady demanded a carriage of Cyrus.¹⁶ 13. So Cyrus⁹ rode in¹⁷ his chariot, but Epyaxa⁹ in this carriage. 14. The whole³ army admired the general's crimson tunic.

EXERCISE XX. [Anab. i. 2. 9-16.]

Study carefully the examples under the Summary of Grammar, 46-55.

Written Exercise. — A king of Phrygia once wished to hold¹⁸ a review. So he sent for all the troops, both Greek

¹ 50.

² 33 ; what case ?

³ 26.

⁴ 29.

⁵ Cp. XVII. 5.

⁶ 14.

⁷ Cp. XVIII. 10.

⁸ Metaphrase : *the*

leaders arrange each

the of himself.

⁹ Cp. VIII. 1.

¹⁰ *els.*

¹¹ Cp. XVIII. 4.

¹² 55.

¹³ 33.

¹⁴ 25.

¹⁵ *Greek : of the Greeks.*

¹⁶ Cp. XVIII. 8.

¹⁷ *In : on.*

¹⁸ *Hold, use mid. of ποίω.*

and barbarian, in his land. He ordered (them)¹ all to muster in² a large park. There accordingly they all assembled near a beautiful spring. (It was)¹ near this spring (that)¹ Xenias celebrated³ the Lycaea with sacrifices.

First the king reviewed his own troops⁴; then the troops which the king of Cilicia sent were formed for battle.⁵ Their⁶ leader was a Greek by birth,⁷ who commanded⁸ the Ionian cities. These troops were drawn up in⁹ squadrons and platoons. The helmets which¹⁰ they wore¹¹ were bronze and their tunics crimson.

At last¹² after the review the men asked their leader for pay; for there was¹³ much money due them. He talked hopefully¹⁴ to them, but could not pay them. But finally a Cilician-lady, whom¹⁵ Xenophon calls Epyaxa, gave the man pay for the whole army.

EXERCISE XXI. [Anab. I. 2. 17, 18.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. The Cilician-queen stops her¹⁶ carriage in-front-of the Greeks. 2. Cyrus also stopped his chariot before the center¹⁷ of the line. 3. Then¹⁸ he sent his interpreter, Pigres by name,¹⁹ to Clearchus. 4. Him he ordered to draw up his own²⁰ force four deep.²¹ 5. Clearchus commanded the whole²² phalanx to advance. 6. In the

¹ Omit.

² Cp. V. note 7.

³ *Celebrated the Lycaea, etc.: sacrificed the Lycaean (sacrifices),* 48.

⁴ 11.

⁶ Cp. XIX. 4.

⁶ Use *οὔτος*.

⁷ 49.

⁸ Use plupf. of *πρωτ-στημι*, 64.

⁹ *κατά*, as in text.

¹⁰ 40.

¹¹ *Wore: were having.*

¹² Cp. XVIII. 13.

¹³ Recast the sentence.

¹⁴ Use the idiom of

I. 2. 11.

¹⁵ 55.

¹⁶ 14.

¹⁷ 25.

¹⁸ Cp. XIX. 9.

¹⁹ What case?

²⁰ 58.

²¹ Cp. XIX. 3.

²² 26.

middle¹ of the line were three Arcadian hoplites. 7. When the trumpet blew, two of these² advanced. 8. But the third ran with a loud shout into a³ tent. 9. But Cyrus's Greeks saw him with laughter. 10. For the tent was the Cilician queen's.⁴ 11. Cyrus, however, is delighted. 12. For the barbarian's⁵ fear was great. 13. He had no fear for the barbarians.⁵ 14. The market-men⁶ fled a two days'⁷ march⁸ into Phrygia.

EXERCISE XXII. [Anab. 1. 2. 19, 20.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. The Cilician-queen went home⁹ in-the-following-way.¹⁰ 2. After the review Cyrus and the army marched-on for five days.⁸ 3. He stayed three days at¹¹ Iconium. 4. A messenger from the king of the Cilicians came in the night.¹² 5. He¹³ asked Cyrus¹⁴ to send Epyaxa to him¹⁵ at once. 6. So Cyrus sent her home by the shortest road.¹⁰ 7. With Epyaxa¹⁶ he sent Menon and two battalions of peltasts.¹⁷ 8. He permitted his men¹⁶ to plunder Iconium. 9. For it was hostile to his¹⁵ friends.¹⁸ 10. Then he rode in his chariot¹⁹ along the road to²⁰ Dana. 11. There he arrested²¹ a Persian nobleman, Megaphernes by name. 12. For, it is said, he was plotting against Cyrus.¹⁶ 13. At any rate²² he was not well-disposed to some¹⁸ of the Greeks.²³ 14. A certain other nobleman also was plotting against the Greeks.

¹ 25.² 63.³ 28.⁴ 57, 58.⁵ 59.⁶ See the expression used in the text.⁷ 62.⁸ 51.⁹ Cp. XI. 5.¹⁰ 50.¹¹ *In*.¹² 67.¹³ *οἷτος*.¹⁴ 65; use *δέομαι*.¹⁵ 33.¹⁶ 94.¹⁷ 61.¹⁸ 93.¹⁹ Cp. XIX. 13.²⁰ *Into*.²¹ Cp. II. 8.²² *At any rate*, *οὐν*.²³ 63.

EXERCISE XXIII. [Anab. I. 2. 21.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Cyrus wishes to invade the land of the Cilicians. 2. He considered the pass a very steep road.¹ 3. He tries to invade Cilicia by night.² 4. But the country was full of soldiers.³ 5. Moreover the king's men were keeping guard upon the mountains. 6. So it was hard for Cyrus⁴ to enter. 7. But Syennesis did not stay many days.⁵ 8. For his⁶ fear of Cyrus⁶ was great. 9. Menon's army was within the mountains. 10. For Cyrus had sent him with Epyaxa.⁷ 11. He had marched a journey⁵ of many days.⁸ 12. The triremes which⁹ Cyrus sent-for arrived. 13. A Lacedaemonian commanded them,¹⁰ who had been an exile. 14. He commanded the triremes¹⁰ which¹¹ Cyrus sent-for. 15. Some of them¹² were already in Cilicia.

EXERCISE XXIV. [Anab. I. 2. 22, 23.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Cyrus will go upon the mountain.¹³ 2. Then he went down into the plain. 3. The plain was full of trees.³ 4. The tents which you saw were (those)¹⁴ of the Cilicians.¹⁵ 5. The triremes were-sailing-round from Ionia. 6. No one was guarding the pass. 7. The plains bear¹⁶ a-great-deal-of¹⁷ millet. 8. High trees surround¹⁶ the plain. 9. The plain is full of wheat³ from the mountain to the sea. 10. Through the city they marched to the river. 11. This river, Cydnus by name,¹⁸

¹ 55.	⁵ 51.	⁹ 40.	¹³ Acc., as the verb	¹⁶ 6.
² 67.	⁶ 59.	¹⁰ 64.	expresses motion.	¹⁷ One word in Greek.
³ 65.	⁷ 94.	¹¹ 42.	¹⁴ Omit.	¹⁸ 49.
⁴ 82.	⁸ 62.	¹² 63.	¹⁵ 57; 58.	

was two plethra¹ in width.² 12. It flowed through the middle³ of the plain. 13. There Syennesis had⁴ a palace and a large park. 14. The park was full of all-sorts-of wild animals.⁵

EXERCISE XXV. [Anab. 1. 2. 17-23.]

Study carefully the examples under the Summary of Grammar, 56-67.

Written Exercise.—In the land of the Cilicians is a rich and beautiful plain. A river flows through the midst of it,⁶ and high mountains surround⁷ it from sea to sea. Within these mountains⁸ is a large park stocked⁹ with wild beasts.¹⁰ And there are lovely springs along the road,¹¹ which the inhabitants greatly admire.

Triremes often sail-round even¹² from Miletus; for all are delighted with¹³ the wheat¹³ and barley¹³ which¹⁴ this plain bears. (It was)¹⁵ here (that)¹⁵ Cyrus once came with his army.¹⁶ For his brother, the king, you remember,¹⁷ desired to put him to death, as¹⁸ formerly he had-been-plotting-against him.¹⁹

So Cyrus tried to invade this beautiful region with an army.¹⁶ But some of the Cilicians²⁰ were-on-guard upon the heights, and in the night²¹ heard the cries²² of Cyrus's troops.²³ So Cyrus went over²⁴ the mountains and descended into the plain. Here he remained many days.²⁵

¹ 62.

² 49.

³ 25.

⁴ Express in two ways.

⁵ 65.

⁶ Use *οὗτος*.

⁷ 6.

⁸ 77.

⁹ *Stocked*: *filled*.

¹⁰ Cp. XXIV. 3.

¹¹ Cp. XVIII. 2.

¹² *Even*, *καί*.

¹³ 90.

¹⁴ 42.

¹⁵ Omit.

¹⁶ 91.

¹⁷ *You remember*, express by *δὲ*.

¹⁸ *As*, use *for*.

¹⁹ Cp. II. 4.

²⁰ 63. Remember that *τὸς* is enclitic.

²¹ 67.

²² 64.

²³ 59.

²⁴ Use *διὰ*.

²⁵ Cp. XXIII. 7.

EXERCISE XXVI. [Anab. I. 2. 24, 25.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Cyrus will arrive before the queen.¹ 2. The women came three days² earlier than the men.¹ 3. The tavern-keepers were in Tarsus. 4. They stayed five days in their taverns. 5. Then they were-cut-to-pieces by Menon's men.³ 6. Or (else)⁴ they were left behind in⁵ the mountains. 7. At any rate⁶ they did not flee to the sea. 8. They fled to a stronghold upon the heights. 9. They abandoned their taverns for⁷ the mountains. 10. And they came to Tarsus five days before the rest⁸ of the army.⁸ 11. They are not able to find the way. 12. Two companies of Epyaxa's escort⁹ fled from their tents.¹⁰ 13. For their fear of the rest¹¹ of the army was intense.¹² 14. So a hundred hoplites perish.

EXERCISE XXVII. [Anab. I. 2. 26, 27.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Cyrus wished to plunder the city of Tarsus.¹³ 2. So he summons the king to his presence.¹⁴ 3. He had never seen a better man than himself.¹ 4. But now he comes into the hands of Cyrus. 5. And his¹⁵ wife persuades him to take pledges from Cyrus.¹⁶ 6. Now¹⁷ Syennesis always obeyed his wife.¹⁸ 7. For she seemed to be stronger than her husband.¹ 8. At any-

¹ 70.² 88.³ 11; 76.⁴ Omit.⁵ Upon.⁶ At any rate, one word.⁷ The verb implies motion.⁸ 23.⁹ Of Epyaxa's escort:
of those about Epyaxa,

63.

¹⁰ 68.¹¹ 59.¹² Intense: much.¹³ 8.¹⁴ To himself, 33.¹⁵ 14.¹⁶ 69.¹⁷ Now, οὐν.¹⁸ 80.

rate¹ she had no fear for the Greeks.² 9. After that the other soldiers came. 10. They were angry on account of the loss of their comrades.³ 11. They were not able to plunder the palace in the city. 12. For a company of Cilicians was keeping guard. 13. They did, however, make-off-with some golden necklaces and short-swords. 14. These they considered worth a great deal.⁴ 15. But after that they gave Cyrus much money for⁵ the soldiers.

EXERCISE XXVIII. [Anab. I. 3. 1, 2.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. The men refuse⁶ to go from the tents. 2. First⁷ Clearchus came to Cyrus. 3. Then the rest of⁸ the soldiers rode into the city. 4. They do not⁹ wish to go forward. 5. Nor⁹ are they willing to march against the king. 6. For they were not hired for¹⁰ that (purpose).¹¹ 7. Clearchus's men first¹² suspected this. 8. But he could not compel them to go. 9. They stoned¹³ Clearchus himself. 10. Who began the throwing?¹⁴ 11. The pack-animals were stoned-to-death by the soldiers.¹⁵ 12. Later Clearchus got-the-better-of¹⁶ his men. 13. He often weeps before his men. 14. Within the mountains¹⁷ is a plain full of all-kinds-of vines.¹⁸

¹ Cp. XXVI. 7.

² Not dative. Recast the sentence.

³ 59.

⁴ *A great deal*: much, 66.

⁵ *els*.

⁶ *Refuse*, οὐ φημι, like the Latin *nego*.

⁷ Cp. I. 3.

⁸ 23.

⁹ *Not* . . . *nor*, οὔτε . . . οὔτε.

¹⁰ ἐπὶ, as in text.

¹¹ Omit.

¹² *i.e. were the first*. Cp. the Latin *primus* and *primum*.

¹³ *Threw with stones*, 86.

¹⁴ The infin. with τὸ in the proper case, 64.

¹⁵ 76.

¹⁶ See 11 and 71, and cp. VIII. 5.

¹⁷ 77.

¹⁸ 65.

EXERCISE XXIX. [Anab. i. 3. 3, 4.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Cyrus heard of the assembly from Clearchus.¹ 2. He, you know,² was a fugitive from his native land. 3. Then Cyrus spoke as follows. 4. Do not be surprised at these circumstances.³ 5. For I do not wonder at what⁴ I hear. 6. I am making war in behalf of the Greeks. 7. But they rob me⁵ of my money.⁵ 8. I⁶ always spend my money on⁷ my children. 9. But Menon hoards his for his own use.⁸ 10. With your help⁹ I will punish him. 11. For I am not¹⁰ well-treated by him.¹⁰ 12. I do not wish to help Greece. 13. Yet he used-to-give me pay for my men.¹¹ 14. In the night¹² a man¹³ came braver than Cyrus.¹⁴

EXERCISE XXX. [Anab. i. 2. 24-3. 4.]

Study carefully the examples under the Summary of Grammar, 67-77.

Written Exercise. — Within the beautiful mountains¹⁵ of Cilicia flowed a river, Cydnus by name.¹⁶ Cyrus and his army marched along this river,¹⁷ and came to Issus three days earlier¹⁸ than Epyaxa's men.¹⁸ Yet they had started from Iconium before Cyrus.¹⁸ But during the night¹² some of the queen's men¹⁹ were left behind. And the rest of the army²⁰ waited upon²¹ the mountains. •

¹ See second example under 69.

² *You know, δὲ.*

³ 72.

⁴ 41, 42.

⁵ 53. Cp. 68.

⁶ 29.

⁷ *On, εἰς.*

⁸ *For his own use*, see the idiom in text.

⁹ *With (the help of) you.*

¹⁰ Metaphrase: *Not for well I suffer by him.*

¹¹ Obj. gen.

¹² 67.

¹³ 39.

¹⁴ Cp. XXVII. 3.

¹⁵ 77.

¹⁶ What case?

¹⁷ Use the acc.

¹⁸ Cp. XXVI. 2.

¹⁹ 63.

²⁰ Cp. XXVIII. 3.

²¹ Cp. XXVI. 8.

Later Cyrus's men became acquainted with Epyaxa's attendants,¹ who gave them² many beautiful gifts, (such as) horses, bracelets, and golden short-swords. When Clearchus heard of this from Cyrus,³ he called his own men to⁴ an assembly. They came together quickly; for they considered their own⁵ commander better than Cyrus.⁶

First he stood a long time before the army and said nothing. Then he began his speech⁷ as follows: "Many gifts have been given by the Cilicians⁸ to Cyrus's men. These he will put-aside for his private use,⁹ and not spend on the army.⁹ So I will force him to give us all the money which he has."

EXERCISE XXXI. [Anab. I. 3. 5, 6.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Clearchus obeyed Cyrus.¹⁰ 2. And always enjoyed his friendship.¹¹ 3. For Cyrus had given him¹² many (presents).¹³ 4. He prefers your¹⁴ friendship. 5. Who preferred you as an ally? 6. They neither¹⁵ follow nor obey me.¹⁰ 7. He will both¹⁶ prove false and¹⁶ desert you. 8. He is everything¹⁷ to me, country, friends, and allies. 9. So I will aid him in return¹⁸ for the good we have received from him.¹⁸ 10. Without him I cannot even¹⁹ repel a foe. 11. That (is the)¹³ opinion I²⁰ have.

¹ 94.² Not acc.³ Cp. XXIX. 1.⁴ *To: into.*⁵ 33; 58.⁶ 70.⁷ 64.⁸ 84; cp. 76.⁹ Cp. XXIX. 8, 9.¹⁰ 80.¹¹ 86.¹² 79.¹³ Omit.¹⁴ 21.¹⁵ Cp. XXVIII. 4.¹⁶ Cp. XIII. 7.¹⁷ *Everything: all (things).*¹⁸ *In return . . . him; metaphor: in return- for what well we suffered by him.*¹⁹ *Not even, οὐδέ.*²⁰ *Emphatic, 29.*

12. Accordingly we will go with Cyrus.¹ 13. For a large army has been collected for him² in Sardis.³ 14. He⁴ has there a large force of allies.⁵

EXERCISE XXXII. [Anab. I. 3. 7, 8.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Some⁶ of the soldiers praised Clearchus. 2. Others⁶ were surprised at the proceeding.⁷ 3. Many of Xenias's men seized their arms. 4. Cyrus was perplexed at their words.⁸ 5. He did not wish to use barbarians⁹ only. 6. So he resolved¹⁰ to send for Pasion. 7. He heard from him¹¹ the plans of the soldiers. 8. For most¹² of the troops came from¹³ Xenias. 9. They (went over and)¹⁴ encamped near Clearchus.¹⁵ 10. They were encamping by a large river. 11. There was a river there, Cydnus by name. 12. "Be of good cheer, fellow-soldiers," said Clearchus. 13. "For all these troubles will turn out all right."¹⁶ 14. Afterwards the same words were praised by Cyrus.¹⁷

EXERCISE XXXIII. [Anab. I. 3. 9, 10.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. First Clearchus wished to get together all his own men. 2. The rest¹⁸ of the army, however, collected unbeknown to him.¹⁹ 3. And many even²⁰ of Pasion's men came to him. 4. This became

¹ 94.⁹ 86.² 82.¹⁰ *He resolved: it seemed best to him.*³ 96.¹¹ 69.⁴ 83.¹² 24.⁵ 61.¹³ Notice the three uses of *παρά*⁶ 27.

in this and the two following sen-

⁷ 72.

tences.

⁸ 90.¹⁴ Omit,¹⁵ Use the acc., as motion is implied. Cp. the next sentence, where the dat. is used.¹⁶ See the idiom in the text.¹⁷ 76.¹⁸ 23.¹⁹ 77.²⁰ *Kal*,

evident on the following day.¹ 5. Cyrus was always well-disposed to the Greeks.² 6. However, he was not their paymaster. 7. For they were not really³ his soldiers. 8. Yet he had mustered them from many provinces. 9. He was wronged by the soldiers of Xenias and Pasion. 10. For they were not willing to follow with him. 11. Accordingly he resolved⁴ to inflict punishment upon them.⁵ 12. But Clearchus was ashamed because he had deceived Cyrus. 13. Cyrus kept-sending-for the exile, Clearchus. 14. He preferred the friendship of the Greek mercenaries. 15. That is why⁶ he did not wish to obey Cyrus.⁷

EXERCISE XXXIV. [Anab. 1. 3. 11, 12.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. It was not time for Cyrus⁸ to neglect himself.⁹ 2. Most¹⁰ of the Greeks¹¹ neglected themselves.⁹ 3. We¹² must consider¹³ about these things. 4. Without commanders we can do nothing. 5. Cyrus is a most valuable¹⁴ friend to men.¹⁵ 6. But to women¹⁶ a most bitter enemy. 7. What ought we to do at this crisis?¹⁶ 8. For we cannot stay here many days¹⁷ without provisions. 9. It seems best to me to besiege this force with our hoplites.¹⁸ 10. For we have¹⁹ troops of-all-kinds in this region.²⁰ 11. They will all come on-the-run.²¹ 12. And we will give them²² five months' ²³ pay. 13. They wish to encamp not far from Cyrus.²⁴ 14. There we shall¹⁹ have a large force, horse, foot, and naval.

¹ 95.	⁷ 80.	¹⁴ <i>Most valuable:</i>	¹⁹ 83.
² 93.	⁸ 82.	<i>worthy of most, 66.</i>	²⁰ 96.
³ τῶ ὄντι, 89.	⁹ 64; 33.	¹⁵ 93; cp. I. 3, 4.	²¹ 87.
⁴ Cp. XXXII. 6.	¹⁰ 24.	¹⁶ <i>At this crisis, ἐκ</i>	²² 79.
⁵ 94.	¹¹ 63.	<i>τοῦτων.</i>	²³ 62.
⁶ <i>That is why, διὰ</i>	¹² 84.	¹⁷ 51.	²⁴ 77.
<i>ταῦτα.</i>	¹³ 169.	¹⁸ 86.	

EXERCISE XXXV. [Anab. I. 3. 5-12.]

Study carefully the examples under the Summary of Grammar, 79-87.

Written Exercise.—When at last¹ Clearchus resolved² to go with Cyrus,³ not all the soldiers were willing to follow. Many of the hoplites refused⁴ to obey their leader,⁵ and preferred the friendship of a certain barbarian. Unbeknown to his men⁶ Clearchus sent messengers to Cyrus, who gave him⁷ this letter :

“Clearchus, our commander, sends you⁷ this (message).⁸ Do not thus neglect yourself⁹ and your country. It is time for you¹⁰ to have regard for yourself.⁹ The barbarians¹¹ have many ships with which¹² already they have blockaded Miletus. But neither ships nor horses are of any use¹³ without men. Most¹⁴ of my men have been wronged by Xenias,¹⁵ and refuse to go on without more pay. What then ought I to do?”

When the messengers had given this letter to Cyrus, they returned with laughter¹⁶ to the army; for Clearchus was in reality¹⁷ plotting against Cyrus.³

EXERCISE XXXVI. [Anab. I. 3. 13, 14.]

For Oral Translation.—1. Some¹⁸ of the men said what they thought. 2. Others¹⁸ were prompted by Cyrus.¹⁹ 3. These men have been ordered²⁰ by Cyrus²¹ to remain.

¹ *At last*, ἔσθην.

² Cp. XXXII. 6.

³ 94.

⁴ *Refused: not wished.*

⁵ 80.

⁶ Cp. XXXIII. 2.

⁷ 79.

⁸ *Omit.*

⁹ Cp. XXXIV. 1.

¹⁰ 82.

¹¹ 83.

¹² 86.

¹³ *Of use*; see how this is expressed in the text (I. 3. 11).

¹⁴ Cp. XXXIV. 2.

¹⁵ 84.

¹⁶ 87.

¹⁷ Cp. XXXIII. 7.

¹⁸ 27.

¹⁹ 76.

²⁰ Use κελεύω.

²¹ 84.

4. They showed the difficulty to the others.¹ 5. The rest² of the army came five days⁸ before Cyrus.⁴ 6. Cyrus arrived a little⁵ sooner than the Cilicians.⁴ 7. On the next day they asked boats of Cyrus.⁶ 8. In Greece the guides⁷ had many possessions. 9. He pretended to be fighting with the Greeks.⁸ 10. The guides marched many parasangs with Cyrus.⁹ 11. The generals whom they chose were friendly to us.¹⁰ 12. Neither Cyrus nor the army will seize the heights. 13. They will rule the heights¹¹ which¹² they have taken. 14. They gave the money to the leaders whom¹² they chose.

EXERCISE XXXVII. [Anab. I. 3. 15, 16, 17.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. I am not going to assume this command.¹³ 2. Clearchus knew how both to command and to obey. 3. He obeyed as¹⁴ well as any man alive.¹⁴ 4. One man in particular¹⁵ exposed the folly of the others. 5. For they were spoiling Cyrus's expedition for him.¹⁶ 6. They had no confidence in Cyrus's guides.¹⁷ 7. And they hesitated, too, to embark on his boats. 8. Yet he did not sink them with his triremes.¹⁸ 9. Cyrus had many large triremes. 10. What hindered them going off¹⁹ unbeknown to Cyrus²⁰? 11. Cyrus is not going to make an expedition back again. 12. Nor are we going to make

¹ 23; 79.

² 23.

⁸ 88.

⁴ Cp. XXVI. 10.

⁵ *A little*, *ὀλίγω*, 88.

⁶ 53.

⁷ 83.

⁸ 92.

⁹ 91.

¹⁰ 93.

¹¹ 64.

¹² 42.

¹³ 48.

¹⁴ See the idiomatic phrase in the text.

¹⁵ Use the expression in text, § 14.

¹⁶ *Cyrus's expedition for him: the expedition for Cyrus*, 82.

¹⁷ 80.

¹⁸ 86.

¹⁹ *Going off: to go off.*

²⁰ Cp. XXXIII. 2.

him our paymaster.¹ 13. Still he is but a little² stronger than we (are).³ 14. Therefore I am vexed at these proceedings.⁴

EXERCISE XXXVIII. [Anab. 1. 3. 18, 19.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. All this is nonsense. 2. For what (purpose)³ did Cyrus employ the Greeks⁵? 3. These undertakings were not like the former⁶ (ones).³ 4. For they were greater than the present⁷ (ones).³ 5. Formerly the mercenaries went-inland-with Cyrus.⁸ 6. But these Greeks are not like the mercenaries.⁶ 7. For they are no longer friendly to Cyrus.⁶ 8. For he does not use their boats.⁵ 9. The commander⁹ of the mercenaries had five triremes. 10. With these⁵ he was besieging Miletus. 11. The guides feared to embark on¹⁰ the triremes. 12. It is foolish to ask the guides¹¹ for a boat.¹¹ 13. For they are not willing to go with us.⁸ 14. They will arrive many days¹² before Epyaxa.⁷

EXERCISE XXXIX. [Anab. 1. 3. 20, 21.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. These (plans)³ seem best to Cyrus¹³ and the army.¹³ 2. They choose the same men as guides.¹⁴ 3. He is three parasangs¹⁵ distant from the river.¹⁶ 4. He inflicts punishment on his¹⁷ brother.⁸ 5. I shall not go-inland-with Cyrus.⁸ 6. For Abrocomas, my personal enemy, is there. 7. He is now five parasangs¹⁵

¹ 55.² *But a little;*

one word, cp.

XXXVI. 6.

³ Omit.⁴ 90.⁵ 86.⁶ 93.⁷ 70.⁸ 94.⁹ 83.¹⁰ *els.*¹¹ 53.¹² 88.¹³ 79.¹⁴ 8.¹⁵ 51.¹⁶ 68.¹⁷ 14.

off. 8. The delegates will report this to you. 9. They have¹ a suspicion that we are fleeing.² 10. But we shall not lead against the king. 11. The men demand additional³ pay. 12. They did not ask many things of Cyrus.⁴ 13. For he always promised them a great deal.⁵ 14. He gave them more⁶ than they had before.

EXERCISE XL. [Anab. 1. 3. 13-21.]

Study carefully the examples under the Summary of Grammar, 88-96.

Written Exercise. — When the soldiers came to the assembly on that day,⁷ Clearchus immediately stood up. For he pretended to wish to arrive at Sardis with his army⁸ five days⁹ earlier than the other Greeks. Now¹⁰ the other generals chose Clearchus leader,¹¹ for he was well-disposed to Cyrus.¹² And he always obeyed him¹³ and did what he thought best.¹⁴

So he said, "Fellow-soldiers, I cannot assume this command¹⁵; for as you know¹⁰ I do not wish to-make-the-march-inland-with¹⁶ Cyrus.¹⁷ My plan is¹⁸ to go back to Greece at once. For in the Peloponnesus I have¹⁹ a wife and many palaces. Give me therefore a guide who shall go with me²⁰ over the mountains. Then no-one can prevent

¹ Cp. XXXVIII. 9.

² 140.

³ How is the idea of additional expressed in the text?

⁴ Cp. XXXVIII. 12.

⁵ *A great deal: many (things).*

⁶ *More than (what) they had, 42.*

⁷ 95.

⁸ 91.

⁹ 88.

¹⁰ 87.

¹¹ 55.

¹² 93.

¹³ 80.

¹⁴ *What he thought best, see text, § 20.*

¹⁵ Cp. XXXVII. 1.

¹⁶ *Make-the-march-inland-with, one word in Greek.*

¹⁷ 94.

¹⁸ *My plan is: to me it seems best.*

¹⁹ 83.

²⁰ 91 or 94.

me from embarking¹ on a Greek trireme, and I shall soon sail away to my beloved country."

Thus he spoke; but it² all seemed nonsense to the others, and they were vexed at these words,³ and openly bade him depart. For they no longer trusted the Lacedaemonian exile⁴ who formerly fought with the Thracians.⁵

EXERCISE XLI. [Anab. i. 4. 1, 2.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. The Psarus river is three plethra⁶ in width.⁷ 2. But there are bridges on⁸ the river Pyramus. 3. Now I am going⁹ to Issus. 4. But I shall not remain in that city many days.¹⁰ 5. For I do not wish to obey the admiral.⁴ 6. Many guides were on the ships. 7. With the same ships¹¹ Tamos is besieging Miletus. 8. Miletus is besieged by the Egyptian admiral.¹² 9. He is the bravest of all¹³ whom¹⁴ Cyrus has. 10. Let us stay¹⁵ there seven days. 11. Lead¹⁶ the troops to the river. 12. Do not lead¹⁷ against the king. 13. Let us¹⁸ all send messages to Cyrus.

EXERCISE XLII. [Anab. i. 4. 3, 4.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. These are the hoplites which¹⁸ Chirisophus commands. 2. But he does not command the ships. 3. The troops will come on¹⁹ Cyrus's ships. 4. Let us revolt¹⁵ from Cyrus. 5. All²⁰ the Greeks went

¹ *From embarking: to embark.*

² Omit.

³ 90.

⁴ 80.

⁵ 92.

⁶ 62.

⁷ 49.

⁸ *ἐπὶ* and dat.

⁹ 98. 2.

¹⁰ 51.

¹¹ 86.

¹² 76.

¹³ 63.

¹⁴ 42.

¹⁵ 101.

¹⁶ 100.

¹⁷ 102.

¹⁸ 64.

¹⁹ Use *ἐπὶ* and the gen.

²⁰ 26.

over to Cyrus. 6. Let us join Cyrus's expedition¹ against his brother. 7. Chirisophus,² (go and)⁸ anchor⁴ near the gates of Syria. 8. Guard⁴ the river with your hoplites.⁵ 9. Between the walls was a river, three plethra⁶ in width. 10. These walls went-down to the river. 11. And the Greeks could not go-by. 12. Do not besiege⁷ Miletus with your ships.⁵ 13. For Tamos is present with⁸ his whole⁹ force. 14. He is at Issus, a border-town¹⁰ by the sea.

EXERCISE XLIII. [Anab. i. 4. 5, 6.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Men were coming from both¹¹ walls. 2. For they heard of¹² Cyrus's expedition from Abrocomas.¹³ 3. Let us send for¹⁴ all our ships. 4. For Cyrus is disembarking many hoplites. 5. But the Cilicians are-on-guard within and without the walls.¹⁵ 6. They cannot, however, overpower the Egyptians. 7. For they have sent for thirty thousand¹⁶ peltasts. 8. Wait in Myriandus ten days.¹⁷ 9. Then send for⁴ the merchantmen of the Phoenicians. 10. But do not⁷ before then¹⁸ try⁷ to use the mercenaries.⁵ 11. All the army⁹ is vexed at your words.¹⁹ 12. However, let us not anchor¹⁴ in the river. 13. But disembark⁴ all the hoplites at once. 14. And lead them to the space between²⁰ the two cliffs.

¹ Join . . . expedition : proceed with Cyrus.

² 45.

⁸ Omit, but express the idea of motion by the acc. with *παρά*.

⁴ 100.

⁵ 86.

⁸ 62.

⁷ 102.

⁸ Cp. i. 13.

⁹ 26.

¹⁰ 8.

¹¹ 22.

¹² *Heard of*: *heard*.

¹⁸ 69.

¹⁴ 101.

¹⁵ 77.

¹⁶ *Thirty thousand*: *three myriads (of)*.

¹⁷ 51.

¹⁸ *Before then*, *πρὸ σθεν*.

¹⁹ 90.

²⁰ *The space between*, etc.; see the idiom used in § 4 of text.

EXERCISE XLIV. [Anab. i. 4. 7, 8.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. We have heard the story¹ of Xenias. 2. He put his most valuable effects on board² a ship. 3. Then he began-to-sail³ away. 4. But not all his men⁴ were with him. 5. For many went over to Clearchus. 6. Accordingly Xenias at once became jealous.⁵ 7. And he called together the rest of⁶ his men. 8. "Fellow-soldiers," he said, "a report about me is going about. 9. But do not trust⁷ those barbarians. 10. For they are cowards and wish to do us harm.⁸ 11. Moreover, I am not even vexed at the occurrence.⁹ 12. I shall neither run away nor try to desert you. 13. So let us¹⁰ all openly¹¹ sail away to Sardis."

EXERCISE XLV. [Anab. i. 4. 1-8.]

Study carefully the examples under the Summary of Grammar, 98-102.

Written Exercise. — After the ships of his allies reached¹² Cilicia, many things troubled Cyrus. First some of his mercenaries¹³ went over to the enemy. Then Chrisophus withdrew with¹⁴ the troops which¹⁵ he commanded. And finally two generals took¹⁶ arms and supplies of all kinds and¹⁶ sailed away to Greece.

Cyrus naturally was grieved at these proceedings.¹⁷ So he stood a long time¹⁸ in front of the whole¹⁹ army and

¹ *The story of, τὰ περὶ*
and gen.

² *On board, ἐν.*

³ *Began-to-sail, use the*
impf.

⁴ 11.

⁵ *Became jealous, 98. 4.*

⁶ 23.

⁷ 102. Cp. XI. 4.

⁸ 54.

⁹ Cp. XXXVII. 14.

¹⁰ 101.

¹¹ Use the idiom of
1. 3. 21.

¹² *Reached: arrived*
at.

¹³ 63.

¹⁴ See XLII. 13.

¹⁵ Cp. XLII. 1.

¹⁶ *Took . . . and:*
having taken.

¹⁷ Cp. XLIII. 11.

¹⁸ 51.

¹⁹ 26.

wept. Then he said in a loud voice¹: "My² friends, I have called you together because I wish³ to tell you something. Xenias and Pasion have long been plotting against both you⁴ and all of us.⁴ They wished to do us harm⁵ and rob us⁶ of our property.⁶ They have sailed off with⁷ their wives and children. But let them go⁸; let us not pursue⁹ them. Let us not be angry with them¹⁰ any longer either.¹¹ But go back⁸ to your tents and choose other officers instead of these cowardly generals."

EXERCISE XLVI. [Anab. i. 4. 8, 9.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Let us all be present on board¹² the ships. 2. For Cyrus is robbing us¹³ of our children.¹³ 3. He does this in order to take¹⁴ our money. 4. Who wishes to use our property¹⁵? 5. Let us use⁹ the boats¹⁶ for this.¹⁶ 6. Let them arrest⁸ the guides in Sardis. 7. They are being deprived of their wives and children.¹⁷ 8. Do not deprive us¹⁸ of our ships.¹⁸ 9. Do not be discouraged¹⁸ in regard to the expedition. 10. Cyrus took a trireme in order to pursue¹⁴ them. 11. And Xenias said, "Do not chase¹⁸ me, Cyrus." 12. So Cyrus keeps him under guard¹⁹ in Sardis. 13. Pasion escapes by stealth²⁰ in order not to be arrested.¹⁴ 14. Let him go; let nobody pursue; come back at once.

¹ Use *φωνή*, 87.

² Cp. XLIV. 8.

³ *Because I wish:*
wishing, 159.

⁴ 94.

⁵ 54.

⁶ 53.

⁷ See XLII. 13.

⁸ 100.

⁹ 101.

¹⁰ 90.

¹¹ *Not . . . either: neither.*

¹² *On board, ἐν and gen.*

¹³ What two constructions
may be used?

¹⁴ 110.

¹⁵ 86.

¹⁶ 49.

¹⁷ 68.

¹⁸ 102.

¹⁹ *Under guard:*
being guarded.

²⁰ *Escapes-by-*
stealth, one word.

EXERCISE XLVII. [Anab. i. 4. 9, 10.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. The Chalus river is a plethrum¹ in width. 2. Many rivers are full of fish.² 3. But this contains many large, tame ones.³ 4. The Syrians consider fish gods.⁴ 5. So they do not allow (anybody)⁵ to injure them. 6. And the fish in the Chalus are both large and tame. 7. Many come to see⁶ these tame fish. 8. The Dardas is another river in Syria. 9. Near this⁷ a king of Syria had a park. 10. Cyrus halted in the park in order to burn⁶ the palace. 11. Do not burn⁸ the park, good Cyrus. 12. For the people are gathering to sacrifice⁶ to the gods. 13. Let them not assemble⁹ in these villages. 14. For they belong to¹⁰ Cyrus's mother. 15. The king gave them to her for pin-money.¹¹ 16. He sends for guides who shall lead¹² the army home.

EXERCISE XLVIII. [Anab. i. 4. 11, 12.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. They allow Cyrus to burn the palace. 2. But he does not lay waste the beautiful park. 3. Thapsacus is situated near¹³ the Euphrates river. 4. Here the Euphrates is four stades in width. 5. So Cyrus remains in Thapsacus five days. 6. He sends for the generals in order to tell⁶ them something. 7. "In reality,"¹⁴ he said, "we assembled to march⁶ inland. 8. And our route now will be against the king. 9. Try-to-

¹ 62.² 65.³ *Large, tame ones: large and tame (ones).*⁴ 55.⁵ Omit.⁶ 110.⁷ What case?⁸ 102.⁹ 100.¹⁰ *Belong to: are of, 58*¹¹ Note the idiom.¹² 111.¹³ Cp. XLVII. 9.¹⁴ Cp. XXXIII. 7.

persuade¹ your men to follow. 10. Then let us² all make² the march zealously." 11. All this was told the soldiers³ by the generals.⁴ 12. And they at first were angry with the officers.⁵ 13. Cyrus kept⁶ the thing secret so that they might not desert.⁷ 14. But they pretend to be angry, that Cyrus may give⁷ them⁸ money.

EXERCISE XLIX. [Anab. 1. 4. 13, 14.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. In Babylon are many minas of silver.⁸ 2. These Cyrus promises to his Greeks. 3. Each man⁹ shall have five minas. 4. Let us promise each⁸ one mina. 5. I promise this in order that he may come⁷ to Babylon. 6. For he will bring you all back to Greece. 7. Then he will give you pay in full. 8. So follow Cyrus¹⁰ and his¹¹ faithful Greeks. 9. Let him not assemble¹² his men apart from the rest.¹³ 10. What then will he urge them to do? 11. He will beg them¹⁴ to cross the river at once. 12. And he will honor them above¹⁵ Menon's men.¹⁶ 13. They will follow in order to be greatly honored.⁷ 14. All obeyed in order to be honored⁷ by Cyrus. 15. And Menon sends men to cross¹⁷ the river immediately.

EXERCISE L. [Anab. 1. 4. 8-14.]

Study carefully the examples under the Summary of Grammar, 110, 111.

Written Exercise. — Menon, as you know,¹⁸ was the worst of the Greek generals. He loved neither Cyrus

¹ 98. 3.	⁶ <i>Kept-secret</i> , one	¹⁰ What case?	¹⁵ <i>Above: more than.</i>
² 101.	word.	¹¹ 21.	¹⁶ 70.
³ 79.	⁷ 110.	¹² 102.	¹⁷ 111.
⁴ 76.	⁸ 61.	¹³ 77.	¹⁸ <i>As you know, δὴ.</i>
⁵ 90.	⁹ 83.	¹⁴ 65.	

nor the king, but plotted against them¹ in order to be² king of the Persians himself. He used the property³ of others to get pay for his soldiers,⁴ and even⁵ robbed women and children of their money⁶ to maintain² his army.

When Menon attempted to slip away, Cyrus sent two companies of hoplites to pursue him to the Chalus river. This was the river, you remember,⁷ full of tame fish⁸ which⁹ some of the barbarians¹⁰ consider gods.⁹

However, Menon and his men reached this river many days¹¹ before Cyrus.¹¹ Do not be surprised¹² at this,¹³ for Cyrus had a large army, and large armies cannot move rapidly. Besides,¹⁴ Cyrus had already sent troops to seize² Menon in Thapsacus. Do not say¹² anything more, but listen, that the story¹⁵ of Menon may be known to all.

EXERCISE LI. [Anab. I. 4. 15, 16.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. What did Menon bid his men do?¹⁶ 2. He bade them follow in order to seem² more faithful. 3. He looked out that they should seem¹⁷ faithful. 4. Good generals look out for their men.¹⁸ 5. And they see to it that they are faithful.¹⁷ 6. And good soldiers obey their leaders.¹⁹ 7. Menon feared that Clearchus would be honored²⁰ more than he.²¹ 8. And Clearchus feared that Menon would not cross²⁰ the river. 9. For he too was planning to be king.¹⁷ 10. Let us all be²² grateful²²

¹ 94.² 110.³ *The (property),*
τά, but see 86.⁴ 82.⁵ καί.⁶ 53.⁷ Cp. sentence 1, above.⁸ 65.⁹ 55.¹⁰ 63.¹¹ Cp. XXXVIII. 14.¹² 102.¹³ 90.¹⁴ Besides, προσέτι δέ.¹⁵ Cp. XLIV. 1.¹⁶ *Do: to do.*¹⁷ 112.¹⁸ 64.¹⁹ 80.²⁰ 113.²¹ Cp. XLIX. 12.²² 101. Note the idiom
of the text.

to Cyrus. 11. I fear that he will use¹ only the faithful.²
 12. Do not consider³ Menon a friend⁴ any longer.
 13. For he is taking care that Cyrus shall not honor⁵ us.
 14. Praise the men that they may be⁶ grateful to you.
 15. For Cyrus fears that they no longer love¹ him.⁷

EXERCISE LII. [Anab. I. 4. 17, 18, 19.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. The soldiers wish you success.⁸
 2. So praise them in a loud voice.⁹ 3. For they are in high hopes.
 4. The whole¹⁰ army wishes to cross the river.
 5. Why will they not use boats²? 6. There are no boats at¹¹ the river.
 7. For they were burned by Abrocomas, that you might not cross.⁶ 8. He burns them, I say, that you may not cross.⁶ 9. And these rivers are not fordable.¹²
 10. Now the army will see a¹³ miracle. 11. The river will make way for them.¹⁴
 12. The gods will take care that the water wets⁵ nobody.
 13. I fear that there is¹ no wine in the village. 14. Take care that the same boats are⁵ stocked with¹⁵ provisions.

EXERCISE LIII. [Anab. I. 5. 1, 2, 3.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. The road through Arabia is level.
 2. Cyrus's soldiers marched along the plain.¹⁶ 3. Frequently they saw wormwood and reeds.
 4. There were no hills in the plain. 5. The plain was full of wild asses.¹⁷ 6. And sometimes they saw wild asses. 7. The

¹ 113.⁷ 33.¹³ 28.² 86.⁸ See how expressed in the text.¹⁴ 94.³ 102.⁹ 87.¹⁵ *Stocked with: full of.*⁴ 55.¹⁰ 26.¹⁶ Use the acc.⁵ 112.¹¹ *ἐπὶ* and dat.¹⁷ 65.⁶ 110.¹² *διαβαρὺς περὶ*.

horsemen drew near in order to pursue¹ them. 8. But the asses ran rapidly to escape.¹ 9. They raise their wings like sails. 10. The animals fear that the soldiers will not stop.² 11. They rouse the partridges in order to capture¹ them. 12. The soldiers rise³ early⁴ to hunt.¹ 13. Cyrus rose³ in order to hunt¹ ostriches. 14. He looks out that all his men shall hunt⁵ gazelles.

EXERCISE LIV. [Anab. 1. 5. 4, 5, 6.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Cyrus reached the deserted town before the army.⁶ 2. A beautiful river, Mascas by name, surrounds the city. 3. The width of the Mascas was a plethrum. 4. Cyrus stayed in the city a day⁷ to forage.¹ 5. For hunger is destroying some of the pack-animals.⁸ 6. And many of the soldiers⁸ also are perishing. 7. Let the commanders take care⁹ that the soldiers shall not perish.⁵ 8. The men fear that there is² no fodder in the plain. 9. For many days⁷ the army¹⁰ had no grain. 10. The generals sold the grain which they brought¹¹ with them.¹¹ 11. The inhabitants came to sell¹ their millstones. 12. But Cyrus said, "We do not wish the millstones. 13. For neither we nor our horses can eat them. 14. Give us¹² either grain or flesh." 15. Cyrus looked out that the army should have⁵ a quart of meal for two sigli.¹³

¹ 110.

² 113.

³ Use the middle of *ἀνίστημι*.

⁴ *πρῶς*.

⁵ 112.

⁶ 70.

⁷ 51.

⁸ 63.

⁹ 100.

¹⁰ 83.

¹¹ *Brought with them : came*

having.

¹² 79.

¹³ 66.

EXERCISE LV. [Anab. i. 4. 15-5. 6.]

Study carefully the examples under the Summary of Grammar, 112, 113.

Written Exercise. — When Cyrus was marching through Arabia, he made¹ very long marches.² For the land was all a plain and perfectly³ bare. There was neither fodder for the horses,⁴ nor grain for the men.⁴ And Cyrus feared that the soldiers would die⁵ of hunger.⁶ But he saw to it that all⁷ (of them)⁸ should have⁹ plenty of meat; for there were wild animals of all kinds in the plain. So he planned that the men should often hunt⁹ these, and sent whole companies to pursue¹⁰ them. And the horsemen gladly did so, for Cyrus always took care that his troops should have⁹ food. Accordingly they hunted even the wild asses, but these ran much faster than the horses,¹¹ so but few¹² were caught. And the ostriches were swifter than the asses,¹¹ for they were able to use both feet¹³ and wings.¹³ But the soldiers pursued vigorously in order to overtake¹⁰ the flying prey. Thus Cyrus both sees to it that his soldiers⁷ shall have⁷ food, and prepares them in spirit¹⁴ for¹⁵ battle.

EXERCISE LVI. [Anab. i. 5. 7, 8.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. These days' marches¹⁶ we shall make very long. 2. If they are¹⁷ in that country they are making long marches.¹⁶ 3. He feared that they would not get⁵ to water. 4. On one occasion¹⁸ much mud appeared

¹ Use πορεύομαι or ἐλαύνω.

² 48.

³ παντάπασι.

⁴ 82.

⁵ 113.

⁶ 90.

⁷ 83.

⁸ Omit.

⁹ 112.

¹⁰ 110.

¹¹ 70.

¹² But few, one word.

¹³ 86.

¹⁴ 89.

¹⁵ els.

¹⁶ Cognate acc.

¹⁷ 116.

¹⁸ See the idiom of text.

in the plain. 5. Cyrus halts¹ in order to extricate² the wagons. 6. Let the soldiers throw off³ their⁴ beautiful cloaks. 7. What discipline!⁵ Just⁶ see the nobles with⁷ their⁴ crimson shirts! 8. Do not jump⁸ into that mud. 9. If they get out⁹ the wagons, they are not nobles. 10. If Epyaxa was present,⁹ she saw a bit of fine discipline. 11. If Cyrus said,⁹ "Leap into the mud," into the mud they leaped. 12. They were running to gain¹⁰ the victory.¹¹ 13. Cyrus took care that the men should not act leisurely.¹² 14. If all are present,⁹ I am ready to begin my speech.¹¹

EXERCISE LVII. [Anab. i. 5, 9, 10.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. The king's forces are scattered.¹³ 2. But let us hasten¹⁴ that the armies may collect. 3. I fear that the king will not pay¹⁵ attention to Cyrus.¹⁶ 4. If he hurries⁹ now, he is a wise general. 5. The extent of the king's territory is very great. 6. But the length¹⁷ of the roads makes it weak. 7. However, we¹⁸ are weaker than the king.¹⁹ 8. If he delays²⁰ for provisions, he marches the faster. 9. If we delayed²⁰ anywhere, we always bought provisions. 10. If the men had⁹ hides, they filled them with hay.²¹ 11. Let us fill¹⁴ all²² the skins with hay. 12. Sew them up that the water may not reach² them.¹¹ 13. In this plain millet is most abundant. 14. Be sure that all the men cross¹² on rafts.²³

¹ Use the middle.	⁶ δή.	¹² 112.	¹⁸ 29.
² 110.	⁷ ἐχούρας.	¹³ <i>Have been scattered.</i>	¹⁹ 70.
³ 100.	⁸ 102.		²⁰ 117.
⁴ The article.	⁹ 116.	¹⁴ 101.	²¹ 65.
⁵ HA. 761; B. 366, note; G. 1129; Gl. 509. c.	¹⁰ Use τυγχάνω (110).	¹⁵ 113.	²² 26.
	¹¹ 64.	¹⁸ 94.	²³ 86.
		¹⁷ Use the plural.	

EXERCISE LVIII. [Anab. I. 5. 11, 12.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Menon's men often had quarrels.¹ 2. If they stopped² for food, they fell-to-quarreling. 3. If the man was-in-the-wrong,³ he received a beating. 4. The rest⁴ of the army is-angry-at Menon.⁵ 5. So they go to the river to inspect⁶ the boats. 6. For they no longer wish to split wood. 7. Let us all go⁷ to the ford to buy⁶ provisions. 8. Do not take⁸ Cyrus's rafts. 9. O that the water may not touch⁹ the hay!¹⁰ 10. When Clearchus was riding along, the soldiers threw stones.¹¹ 11. And one hurled his ax¹¹ at him. 12. He was afraid that he should miss¹² him.¹⁰ 13. If Menon was-in-the-wrong,² he always was angry. 14. O that Menon's men had not thrown¹³ stones¹¹!

EXERCISE LIX. [Anab. I. 5. 13, 14.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Let us raise¹⁴ a loud shout. 2. For Cyrus is coming up to inspect⁶ the camp. 3. He will see there the soldiers' shields. 4. Do not throw your axes¹⁵ at him. 5. For I fear that you will miss¹² him.¹⁶ 6. If the shields were³ there, Cyrus saw them. 7. Proxenus came later than Cyrus.¹⁷ 8. He was following a detachment⁵ of cavalry. 9. He summoned the troops to arms. 10. But they did not know what was the matter.¹⁸

¹ *Had quarrels*: impf.
of ἀμφιλέγειν τι.

² 117.

³ 116.

⁴ 23.

⁵ 80.

⁶ 110.

⁷ 101.

⁸ 102.

⁹ 108.

¹⁰ 64.

¹¹ 86.

¹² 113.

¹³ 109.

¹⁴ Use ποιοῦμαι,
101.

¹⁵ Cp. LVIII. 11, and

102.

¹⁶ Cp. LVIII. 12.

¹⁷ 70.

¹⁸ Recast the sentence,
using the idiom of § 13
of text.

11. Proxenus made light of¹ Clearchus's troubles.¹ 12. So he said, "Get out of the way." 13. Clearchus narrowly escaped being² stoned to death. 14. If we charge³ on the Thracians, they always are-panic-stricken. 15. See-to-it that Menon's men rest⁴ under arms.

EXERCISE LX. [Anab. I. 5. 7-14.]

Study carefully the examples under the Summary of Grammar, 114-117.

Written Exercise. — If you were⁵ in the city which⁶ the Persians call Charmande,⁶ you saw a fine example of the Persians' discipline. Cyrus's men were⁷ having a bit of a dispute⁷ about⁸ some wagons, which⁹ they found in the town. In-general¹⁰ if they found³ wagons, the leaders reported it to Cyrus. But on-this-occasion¹¹ one man proposed to take¹² the wagons to the city, sell¹³ them, and buy grain in return.

But another man rose¹⁴ and said, "Fellows, unless we wish to wrong Cyrus, we must leave the wagons here. For he is coming to inspect¹⁵ our lines. So do not do¹⁶ any¹⁷ harm,¹⁷ for I am afraid that he will give¹⁸ us¹⁹ a beating.¹⁸" When he had said that, the soldiers began to throw their axes²⁰ at him.

That is always the way.²¹ If a man²² is not willing³ to

¹ Made light of: spoke tamely.

² Narrowly escaped: lacked little (65) to be.

³ 117.

⁴ 112.

⁵ 116.

⁶ 55.

⁷ Were-having-a-bit-of-a-dispute: cp. LVIII. 1.

⁸ περὶ and gen.

⁹ 42.

¹⁰ See § 9 of text.

¹¹ On this occasion, νῦν.

¹² To take: having taken, 159. 1.

¹³ See § 5 of text.

¹⁴ Use a participle, 159. 1.

¹⁵ 110.

¹⁶ 102.

¹⁷ κακὸν τι.

¹⁸ Inflict blows (113).

¹⁹ 94.

²⁰ Cp. LVIII. 11.

²¹ Recast: always but thus it has.

²² τις.

wrong his commander, all the rest are angry with him.¹ If he makes² light³ of his leader's misfortunes, they consider him⁴ a fine fellow.⁵ So (in the case of)⁶ Menon: if a man tried to be honest, (he)⁶ was greatly displeased; but always praised those⁷ who did wrong.⁷ Let us not act lazily, but imitate⁸ the discipline of the Persian nobles.

EXERCISE LXI. [Anab. 1. 5. 15, 16, 17.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. They do not know what they are doing.⁹ 2. If the Greeks are fighting,¹⁰ our affairs¹¹ are in a bad way.¹¹ 3. If those⁷ who are present⁷ fight,¹² Cyrus will be slain. 4. Who will lead us if Cyrus is slain? ¹² 5. For if he shall-be-cut-to-pieces,¹³ the Greeks also will perish. 6. And I fear that the barbarians will be¹⁴ more hostile than these¹⁵ men.¹⁶ 7. O that Proxenus were present!¹⁷ 8. For he would tell¹⁸ us what we ought¹⁹ to do. 9. Cyrus would¹⁸ never do¹⁸ that. 10. May he soon come to himself.²⁰ 11. If the Greeks joined² battle with each other, they always suffered heavily. 12. Let us not speak²¹ lightly of Menon's suffering. 13. For I fear that we may ourselves be-cut-to-pieces.¹⁴ 14. If he orders¹² us to get out of the way, let us move²² back to quarters.²²

¹ Cp. LVIII. 4.

² 117.

³ Cp. LIX. 11.

⁴ 55.

⁵ καλός τε κάγαθός.

⁶ Omit.

⁷ 157.

⁸ μιμούμαι, 101.

⁹ Notice the word used in the text (143).

¹⁰ 116.

¹¹ Recast: *the ours have badly*.

¹² ¹¹⁶ 119.

¹³ 121.

¹⁴ 113.

¹⁵ 20.

¹⁶ 70.

¹⁷ 109.

¹⁸ 106.

¹⁹ Use χρή.

²⁰ Metaphrase: *may he become in himself*.

²¹ 101. Cp. LIX. 11.

²² Use the idiom of text, § 17.

EXERCISE LXII. [Anab. i. 6. 1, 2.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Those who¹ were burning¹ the fodder were horsemen. 2. If there was² anything useful in the plain, they burned it. 3. As they advanced³ they saw horse-tracks. 4. If Orontas sees⁴ the trail, he will lie in ambush. 5. For he is plotting against the Persians.⁵ 6. "If you will give⁴ me a troop of horse," he said, "I will capture those men alive."³ 7. "If I should⁶ not give⁶ them, what would⁷ you do⁷?" he replied. 8. "I would slay⁷ both you and myself not long⁸ afterward." 9. If he sees⁹ Cyrus, he will report it to the army. 10. For he is related to Orontas⁵ by birth.¹⁰ 11. Take horsemen, if necessary,⁴ from each of the battalions. 12. If he should burn⁶ the villages, our horses¹¹ would have no fodder. 13. So let us make terms¹² and fight¹² no longer. 14. For those¹ who fight¹ are never happy.

EXERCISE LXIII. [Anab. i. 6. 3, 4, 5.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. That same¹³ Orontas wrote a letter to the king. 2. "I am coming," he said, "with¹⁴ a large army. 3. Tell¹⁵ my men¹⁵ to receive me as a friend. 4. I will bring the rest¹⁶ of the army, if I can.⁴" 5. He will come with¹⁴ very many horsemen. 6. If a trusty man takes⁴ the letter, he will give it to Cyrus. 7. If Cyrus reads⁴ it, he will not consider Orontas faithful. 8. Cyrus

¹ Cp. LXI. 3.² 117.³ 159. 8.⁴ 119.⁵ 94.⁶ 120.⁷ 106.⁸ πολὺ.⁹ Use a participle, 159. 6.¹⁰ 89.¹¹ 83.¹² Metaphrase : *having made terms* (159. 1), *let us fight*.¹³ 32.¹⁴ Cp. I. 13

(159. 8).

¹⁵ Metaphrase : *say to the of me*.¹⁶ 23.

read the letter which Orontas wrote. 9. And at once he ordered a thousand men to stand under arms about his tent. 10. If he should see¹ Orontas, he would arrest him at once. 11. If he arrested² a man,³ he always put him to death. 12. Cyrus would⁴ never read⁴ such a letter. 13. A man³ went out to report⁵ to his friends (about)⁶ Orontas's trial. 14. He took care that all those present⁷ should hear.⁸

EXERCISE LXIV. [Anab. I. 6. 6, 7.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. This-is-the-way-that⁹ Cyrus began his speech.¹⁰ 2. Soldiers, let us deliberate with one-another. 3. If we do¹¹ what is right, we must¹² make war on¹³ Sardis. 4. I will take care that we give⁸ and receive⁸ pledges. 5. If my brother gives¹¹ me a pledge, I will fight. 6. But if he should make¹ me subject to you,¹⁴ I would revolt. 7. Would the Mysians also revolt⁴? 8. Even¹⁵ if you should do¹ harm to their country,¹⁶ they would not¹⁵ wrong you. 9. Nobody would wrong⁴ Cyrus's brother. 10. In what¹⁷ are you wronging Cyrus? 11. If he realizes¹¹ his power, he will cease fighting.¹⁸ 12. For he no longer holds the citadel in Sardis. 13. He admits this in order to receive⁵ pledges from you. 14. But he was never wronged by the king.

¹ 120.² 117.³ Use the proper case of *τῆς*.⁴ 106.⁵ 110.⁶ Omit.⁷ 157.⁸ 112.⁹ *οὐτως δὲ*.¹⁰ 64.¹¹ 119.¹² Metaphrase: *it will be necessary us to make.*¹³ Omit (92).¹⁴ 93.¹⁵ *Even not, οὐδέ.*¹⁶ What case?¹⁷ 49.¹⁸ 68.

EXERCISE LXV. [Anab. I. 6. 1-7.]

Study carefully the examples under the Summary of Grammar, 106, 119, 120, 121.

Written Exercise. — Have you ever heard of¹ the trial of Orontas? He was a Persian gentleman, and was said to be related to Artaxerxes² by birth.² He resolved³ once to plot against Cyrus,⁴ and calling together⁵ a few of the noblest Persians,⁶ he said, "Cyrus is advancing with⁷ two thousand horsemen. So, if you will be⁸ my advisers, we shall be able to capture him alive⁹ and kill him. For he never would¹⁰ be able¹⁰ to hinder us. Even if he should see¹¹ us, he could do nothing. We would destroy¹⁰ his army and burn¹⁰ their arms if they should attack¹¹ us. If then you are willing⁸ to come¹² with me, take a part of your troops⁶ and come to my tent by night.¹³"

On hearing⁵ that, one of the Persians who was¹⁴ more faithful than the others,¹⁵ wrote a letter at once to Cyrus. "Dear Cyrus," he said, "Orontas is lying-in-wait with⁷ his horsemen. If he catches⁸ you, he will kill you; but if you come quickly, you will be able to arrest him. For, fearing¹⁴ that the Mysians will stop¹⁶ fighting¹⁷ in order to join¹⁸ you,¹⁹ he is doing harm to their country." This letter was given to Cyrus by a faithful man,²⁰ and Cyrus at once proceeded-to-make-war²¹ on Orontas.

¹ *πρὸς* and *γεν.*² Cp. LXII. 10.³ *He resolved, ἐδόξε*
*αὐτῷ.*⁴ Cp. LXII. 5.⁶ 159. 1.⁸ 63.⁷ Cp. LXIII. 2.⁸ 119.⁹ Cp. LXII. 6.¹⁰ 106.¹¹ 120.¹² 147.¹³ 67.¹⁴ Express by a participle, 159.¹⁵ 70.¹⁶ 113.¹⁷ *Fighting: from the fight,* 68.¹⁸ 110.¹⁹ 94.²⁰ 76.²¹ Impf.

EXERCISE LXVI. [Anab. i. 6. 8, 9.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Because-you-have-been-wronged¹ by Cyrus you are now plotting against him.² 2. Let us plot³ against him-who-wrongs⁴ us. 3. If you are⁵ faithful to my brother, I will be your friend. 4. Even⁶ if I am⁵ faithful, I shall not⁶ seem so to you.⁷ 5. O that you would be⁸ a friend to us! 6. I am not surprised at the present⁹ circumstances. 7. Those-who-were-present⁴ have done no wrong. 8. Let Clearchus express¹⁰ his opinion first.¹¹ 9. If he has⁵ time, he will express his¹² opinion. 10. If we should put¹³ the fellow¹⁴ out of the way, we should no longer need¹⁵ to be on our guard. 11. After giving this advice¹⁶ Cyrus went away. 12. If you are¹⁷ good, you will give me good advice.¹⁸ 13. He said this because-he-was-hostile¹ to Cyrus. 14. Would you also advise¹⁹ Cyrus this?

EXERCISE LXVII. [Anab. i. 6. 10, 11.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. The others also concurred in this opinion.² 2. Then Cyrus, rising,²⁰ seized Orontas by the girdle.²¹ 3. Although Clearchus knew²² this, he did not rise. 4. Orontas did not appear — living⁹ or dead.⁹ 5. Put

¹ *Having-been-wronged*, 159. 2.

² 94.

³ 101.

⁴ 157.

⁵ 119.

⁶ *Even . . . not*, οὐδέ.

⁷ *To you*, emphatic.

⁸ 108.

⁹ 156.

¹⁰ 100.

¹¹ i.e. *let Clearchus be the first*. Cf. Lat. *primus*.

¹² 14.

¹³ 120.

¹⁴ Use οὖτος.

¹⁵ Metaphrase: *it would no longer be necessary*.

¹⁶ *Having advised this*,

159. 1; 48.

¹⁷ 159. 6.

¹⁸ Cp. No. 11 and recast.

¹⁹ 106.

²⁰ 159. 1.

²¹ 64.

²² 159. 7; 162.

this man out of the way as soon as possible. 6. If I do this, those-present¹ will agree to the same opinion.² 7. After this Orontas was led to execution.³ 8. After-being-led⁴ from the tent, Orontas never was seen.⁵ 9. Whoever is led⁶ into Artapates's tent will never be seen alive. 10. If he dies⁷ in the tent, nobody will see him. 11. Whenever he takes⁸ the wrongdoers, he leads them to death. 12. Knowing⁹ this, they are ever on their guard. 13. For they fear that they will be put¹⁰ out of the way. 14. Those-who-are-faithful¹ Cyrus always honors.

EXERCISE LXVIII. [Anab. I. 7. 1, 2.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. The king will come soon¹¹ to fight.¹² 2. Whenever Cyrus makes¹³ a review, the barbarians will come. 3. When the following dawn comes,¹³ they will fight. 4. Clearchus¹⁴ will lead the right wing. 5. But Menon¹⁴ will command the left.¹⁵ 6. Each will marshal his own men. 7. Let us draw up our entire¹⁶ army at midnight. 8. A deserter came⁴ and reported everything to the king. 9. I fear that he will tell¹⁰ about our expedition. 10. Let us call¹⁷ together our men and deliberate.¹⁷ 11. How could¹⁸ we best conduct¹⁸ the battle? 12. Though¹⁹ the king came¹⁹ with his army, he did not fight. 13. If he should fight²⁰ bravely, he would soon conquer. 14. Those who-fight²¹ bravely are-more-apt-to²² conquer.

¹ 37; 157.

² 94.

³ *Death.*

⁴ 159. I.

⁵ *Appeared.*

⁶ 127; 128. III.

⁷ 119.

⁸ 127; 128. II.

⁹ 159. 2.

¹⁰ 113.

¹¹ *Soon, ἔδη. — ?*

¹² 159. 5.

¹³ 128. III.

¹⁴ Cp. note to I. 3.

¹⁵ 64.

¹⁶ 26.

¹⁷ Recast: *hav-*

ing called together

... let us deliberate.

¹⁸ 106.

¹⁹ 159. 7; 162.

²⁰ 120.

²¹ 157.

²² *Are more apt to, μάλλον.*

EXERCISE LXIX. [Anab. i. 7. 3, 4.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Cyrus would¹ never lack¹ barbarians as allies.² 2. But the Greeks are better than many barbarians.³ 3. Whoever proves himself⁴ a brave man is worthy of freedom.⁵ 4. They are worthy of the freedom⁵ which⁶ they have acquired. 5. And we congratulate them for it.⁷ 6. See to it that you are⁸ worthy of the same freedom. 7. The-man-who-wishes⁹ to go home will be an object-of-envy to his friends. 8. But many will prefer life¹⁰ with me. 9. The present¹¹ contest is greater than the former³ (one).¹² 10. But if we endure¹³ the shouting, all the rest will be easy. 11. O that their number were¹⁴ not so great! 12. Whenever the enemy advanced,¹⁵ the barbarians fled. 13. Since they are¹⁶ our allies, they will be envied. 14. If anybody wishes¹³ to go home, let him take us as allies.²

EXERCISE LXX. [Anab. i. 6. 8-7. 4.]

Study carefully the examples under the Summary of Grammar, 126-128, 155-159.

Written Exercise. — Among the Greeks if a man did wrong¹⁷ or plotted-against¹⁷ another (man),¹² the-man-wronged⁹ could bring the wrongdoer⁹ to¹⁸ trial. If the delinquent⁹ refused¹⁹ to obey, the leaders sent men²⁰ to

¹ Cp. LXVIII. 11.⁷ 72.¹⁴ 109.² 8.⁸ 112.¹⁵ 128. II.³ 70.⁹ 157.¹⁶ 159. 2.⁴ Use the proper form (128. II) of *φαίνομαι*.¹⁰ See the phrase used in the text.¹⁷ 117.⁵ 66.¹¹ 156.¹⁸ *els.*⁶ 42.¹² Omit.¹⁹ *Not wished.*¹³ 119.²⁰ *τινάς.*

arrest¹ him, and immediately called together the noblest (men)² as advisers.³ On hearing⁴ both⁵ (sides),² the eldest of those present⁶ said:—

“As I am⁷ the eldest, I will speak first⁸; then let each of the others express his opinion. If this man proves⁹ to-have-done-wrong,¹⁰ let us put him out of the way at once. If not,¹¹ let those-who-wish⁶ rise and call him¹² friend.¹² But if on hearing⁴ all (the evidence)² any one should prefer¹³ to go away¹⁴ and choose¹⁴ other advisers, let him do so. For never should we have leisure to help¹⁵ our friends if we advised all who-asked⁶ (us).² So see that you are¹⁶ faithful and advise whatever you deem¹⁷ best and most fitting; in order that we may conduct¹⁸ the trial as the gods wish.¹⁷”

After all who-wished⁶ had expressed their opinions, those present⁶ rose⁴ and seized the man by the girdle¹⁹ as-a-sign-of-condemnation²⁰; or if not judged²¹ worthy of death,²² they allowed him to depart. But a-man-who-had-plotted-against²³ the king, even though²⁴ one of the noblest Persians, was led off to death.

EXERCISE LXXI. [Anab. I. 7. 5, 6, 7.]

For Oral Translation.—1. One of those present⁶ was a Samian exile. 2. Although he was²⁵ not a Greek, he

¹ 159. 5.

² Omit.

³ 8.

⁴ 159. 1.

⁵ 64. c.

⁶ 157.

⁷ 159. 2.

⁸ Cp. LXVI. 8.

⁹ 119; use *φαίνομαι*.

¹⁰ ἄδικος γεγενημένος,

163.

¹¹ ἐὰν δὲ μή.

¹² 55.

¹³ 120.

¹⁴ *Having gone away*

(159. 1) *to choose* (147).

¹⁵ 149.

¹⁶ 112.

¹⁷ 128. III.

¹⁸ 110; use *ποιέομαι*.

¹⁹ Cp. LXVII. 2.

²⁰ *For death*.

²¹ 159. 6.

²² 66.

²³ Use the aorist (157).

²⁴ Sc. *being* (162).

²⁵ Cp. LXVIII. 12.

was a friend of Cyrus. 3. Cyrus promised much because¹ he was¹ in danger. 4. He cannot give us what he promised. 5. Would you be able² to pay all that you have promised? 6. He will not pay until (things)³ turn out⁴ well. 7. If he should⁵ not succeed,⁵ he could not pay. 8. He promised much before the rest⁶ came.⁷ 9. If he had heard⁸ all, he would not have promised. 10. Men could not live there on account of the cold. 11. While Gaulites⁹ was speaking,⁹ others came up to see¹⁰ Cyrus. 12. Wherever they went¹¹ they saw Gaulites. 13. For he always tries to be wherever Cyrus is-likely-to-see¹² him. 14. This Gaulites was a Samian by birth.¹³

EXERCISE LXXII. [Anab. 1. 7. 8, 9, 10.]

For Oral Translation.—1. The other Greeks went to report¹⁴ this to Cyrus. 2. What would they have,¹⁵ if they should conquer⁵? 3. While they⁹ are going-in,⁹ somebody asks Cyrus: 4. "Shall we have¹⁵ anything, if we conquer¹⁶?" 5. Though¹⁷ many wish this, Cyrus does not satisfy their expectations. 6. We feared that he would not satisfy¹⁸ our expectations. 7. It is possible to fight, if you wish.¹⁶ 8. Though¹⁹ it was possible¹⁹ to fight, he preferred life²⁰ at home. 9. On hearing²¹ that, he sent the men away before they answered.⁷ 10. They will not fight until our men are drawn up.²² 11. Do not give crowns

¹ 159. 2.² 106.³ Omit.⁴ Use the aorist of

γίγνομαι.

⁵ 120.⁶ 23; 3.⁷ 130.⁸ 159. 5 (cp. 118).⁹ 160.¹⁰ 159. 5 (cp. 110).¹¹ 128. II.¹² *Is-likely-to-see: will**see.*¹³ 49.¹⁴ 159. 5.¹⁵ 83.¹⁶ 119.¹⁷ 162.¹⁸ 113.¹⁹ 161.²⁰ Cp. text, 1. 7. 4.²¹ 159. 1.²² 129.

to the Greeks until they conquer.¹ 12. I will not give them crowns, unless² they are victorious.³ 13. "Why,⁴ will your brother fight?" "Indeed,⁵ he won't,"⁵ said Cyrus. 14. Those who have⁶ chariots will have⁷ the victory.

EXERCISE LXXIII. [Anab. 1. 7. 11, 12, 13.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. The enemy had⁷ more chariots than the Greeks. 2. Artagerses led the cavalry⁸ which⁹ we saw. 3. The others fled before the cavalry appeared.¹⁰ 4. If our chariots are present⁸ at the battle, no-one will remain before the king. 5. Do not come¹¹ until the enemy are taken.¹⁰ 6. They were taken before Gobryas appeared.¹⁰ 7. As the horsemen¹² were being arrayed¹² before Cyrus, we saw the king himself. 8. Those⁶ who marched⁶ from Phoenicia were too late¹³ for the battle.¹³ 9. Prisoners¹⁴ and deserters tell the same story. 10. As it is possible¹⁵ to remain, let us be present at¹⁶ the battle. 11. As the king has¹⁷ a very large army, he will wish to fight. 12. After the battle the Greeks captured some of the enemy. 13. But before this was announced¹⁰ many deserted to Cyrus. 14. By these deserters⁶ the number of the enemy was reported to Cyrus.

¹ 129.² *Unless: if not.*³ 119.⁴ *Why, γὰρ.*⁵ Metaphrase: *No, by Zeus, not he will fight.*⁶ 157.⁷ 83.⁸ 64.⁹ 42.¹⁰ 130.¹¹ 102.¹² 160.¹³ Use the idiom of the text and see 71.¹⁴ Metaphrase: *The captured (157) and the having deserted the same (things) announce.*¹⁵ 161.¹⁶ *At: in.*¹⁷ 159. 2 (or 83; 160).

EXERCISE LXXIV. [Anab. i. 7. 14, 15.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. After marching on¹ one day's march,² Cyrus drew⁸ up all⁴ his army in battle array.³ 2. The enemy came before the Greek force was drawn up.⁵ 3. He did not stop until he reached⁶ the deep ditch. 4. The king had extended this ditch many parasangs.² 5. As the ditch⁷ was⁷ deep and wide, grain boats sailed⁸ upon it. 6. Though the river⁷ was⁷ very deep, no boats were seen.⁹ 7. If the canals are¹⁰ deep and a plethrum in width, boats will be able to sail upon them. 8. Before Cyrus had marched¹¹ a parasang the king appeared. 9. On seeing¹ Cyrus's army, he fled to the so-called¹² wall of Media. 10. This wall was twenty feet¹³ in width¹⁴ and extended twenty parasangs² through the plain. 11. Then they came to a deep ditch which had been made by the king.¹⁵ 12. The king had made this ditch while Cyrus⁷ was advancing.⁷ 13. All the trenches flowing¹² from the Tigris river emptied into the Euphrates. 14. But those flowing¹⁶ from the Euphrates extended into the plain.

EXERCISE LXXV. [Anab. i. 7. 5-15.]

Study carefully the examples under the Summary of Grammar, 129, 130, 159, 160, 161.

Written Exercise. — Before Cyrus came¹⁷ to the king's army, he called together¹ all his¹⁸ generals and captains,

¹ 159. 1.⁶ 129.¹¹ Use the aorist ¹⁶ 157.² 51.⁷ 160.

(130).

¹⁷ Metaphrase:³ *Drew-up-in-battle-array*, one word.⁸ 6.¹² 156.*The but Cyrus before to come.*⁴ 26.⁹ *Were seen: appeared.*¹⁸ 62.¹⁸ 14.⁵ 130.¹⁰ 119, but cp. 160.¹⁴ 49.
¹⁵ 84.

and deliberated. After he¹ had spoken¹ about the contest, one of those present,² Gaulites by name,³ said, "Cyrus, some people promise much when they are⁴ in danger, but whenever they are⁵ out of trouble they no longer remember. Take care that you are⁶ not a-person-of-that-sort,⁷ for the soldiers already fear that you cannot⁸ fulfill what you have promised."

Cyrus replied, "Do not be surprised⁹ that I am grieved at the present¹⁰ circumstances. For though¹¹ it is possible¹¹ to have a province greater than my brother's,¹² I prefer to give all¹³ that I have¹³ to my friends. I shall make you all masters of whatever lands¹⁴ we acquire, and to the Greeks I will give also crowns of gold. I shall never consider myself happy until I do¹⁵ this."

On hearing that, before Cyrus could¹⁶ utter another word, the generals went-to-marshaling¹⁷ their men and made a numbering of men, horses, and chariots. While this was taking place,¹ deserters² from the king came to bring a message¹⁸ to the leaders of the Greeks. The latter¹⁹ at once decided¹⁹ to set out with their cavalry and chariots in full array,¹⁰ hoping²⁰ to come upon²⁰ the king near the so-called¹⁰ wall of Media.

¹ 160.⁸ 49.¹⁸ Metaphrase: *all to me being*, 157; 83.² 157.⁴ 159. 8.¹⁴ 60; 43.⁵ 128. II.¹⁵ 129.⁶ 112.¹⁶ 130.⁷ *A-person-of-that-sort: such.*¹⁷ One word in Greek.⁸ 113.¹⁸ *To bring a message: to announce something*, 159. 5.⁹ Cp. XXIX. 4 and text.¹⁹ *The latter decided: to these it seemed best.*¹⁰ 156.¹¹ 161.²⁰ *Hoping to come upon, us and future partic.*¹² *My brother's; the of my brother*, 70; 58.

EXERCISE LXXVI. [Anab. I. 7. 16, 17, 18.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. While this¹ is going on,¹ a soothsayer happens to be present.² 2. After hearing³ this from the soothsayer,⁴ he stops speaking.⁵ 3. As the path¹ was narrow,¹ it seemed best to advance.⁶ 4. While Cyrus¹ was passing-along¹ the wall, Silanus happened to be sacrificing.² 5. That⁷ canal was a fine defense, as⁸ it was⁸ both wide and deep. 6. But Cyrus was not able to get⁹ within the wall. 7. However, the king did not wish to fight¹⁰ on that day. 8. This was another pretext for drawing¹¹ up the army. 9. Cyrus called the soothsayer in order to give¹² him something. 10. Menon would not have fought¹³ within ten days.¹⁴ 11. Since¹⁵ this is so,¹⁵ let us tell the truth.¹⁶ 12. If he should tell the truth,¹⁷ I would give him seven talents. 13. But Cyrus did not promise until the army passed¹⁸ within the canal. 14. Saying³ this, he sent away all the cavalry.

EXERCISE LXXVII. [Anab. I. 7. 18, 19, 29.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. If Cyrus calls¹⁹ Silanus, he will give him the money. 2. For he happens to be²⁰ a soothsayer and tells the truth about the fighting.²¹ 3. He will pay the money before the ten days elapse.²² 4. You

¹ 160.² 163; 165.³ 159. I.⁴ 69.⁵ 164.⁶ 146.⁷ 20.⁸ *As it was: on account of the to be, 145.*⁹ *To become, 148.*¹⁰ 147.¹¹ 59; 151.¹² Express in several ways: 159. 5; 110; 154; 150.¹³ 107 (cp. 118).¹⁴ 67.¹⁵ Metaphrase: *These having thus, 160.*¹⁶ 101.¹⁷ 120.¹⁸ 129.¹⁹ 119.²⁰ 165.²¹ 145; 151.²² 130.

will not fight with the king¹ within five days.² 5. But the king has-not-given-up-the-idea³ of fighting.⁴ 6. He will not hinder us from crossing⁵ the river. 7. He chanced to be making⁶ the march seated⁷ in his chariot. 8. An army, meanwhile, is secretly⁸ maintained⁸ for him. 9. As he has⁹ but-few men in line before him, he seems to be¹⁰ in danger. 10. He will not stop marching,¹¹ though many men¹² desert¹² him. 11. For he wishes to cross¹³ the river before Cyrus's men arrive.¹⁴ 12. Not many of the soldiers marched with¹⁵ all their arms. 13. Some, however, carried their arms on wagons. 14. Would you¹⁶ do¹⁷ that when the¹² enemy were¹² near?

EXERCISE LXXVIII. [Anab. 1. 8. 1, 2, 3.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. He intends to halt¹⁰ at about midnight. 2. The horsemen ride at full speed with their horses¹⁸ in a sweat.⁷ 3. All whom¹⁹ he met were shouting, "Do not fight."²⁰ 4. Whenever he saw²¹ men riding⁷ at full speed, he cried out. 5. He soon met the king¹⁹ apparently²² prepared²³ for battle. 6. It seemed best to the Greeks to fall upon²⁴ the enemy.¹⁹ 7. But they began at once running¹¹ in great confusion.²⁵ 8. While Cyrus¹² was leaping¹² from his chariot, some one seized him by the hand.²⁶ 9. Then putting²⁷ on his breastplate he mounted his

¹ 92.² 67.³ *Has-given-up-the-idea*, one word in Greek.⁴ 68; 151.⁵ 153.⁶ 165.⁷ 159. 8.⁸ *Is secret being maintained*, 165.⁹ 159. 2.¹⁰ 148.¹¹ 164.¹² 160.¹³ 147.¹⁴ 130.¹⁵ *With: having*, 159. 8.¹⁶ 29.¹⁷ 106.¹⁸ 91.¹⁹ 94.²⁰ 102.²¹ 128. 11.²² *ὤς*.²³ 156.²⁴ 146.²⁵ 87.²⁶ 64.²⁷ 159. 1.

chariot.¹ 10. Before they mounted² their horses, each ordered his own line to put-on-full-armor.³ 11. So arming themselves,⁴ all took their places. 12. Clearchus was taking his place with-the-intention-of-falling-upon⁵ the enemy.⁶ 13. But Menon, as it chanced, was already advancing.⁷ 14. For he happened to command⁷ the left wing.⁸

EXERCISE LXXIX. [Anab. I. 7. 16-8. 3.]

Study carefully the examples under the Summary of Grammar, 144-148, 151, 163-165.

Written Exercise. — As the king's men⁹ are advancing¹⁰ along the Tigris river, they come upon tracks⁶ of many horsemen and infantry. So it seems best to all to put on¹¹ their armor and advance at full speed until they come¹² to the great wall. Here they are likely to find¹³ friends and allies (who are)¹⁴ prepared¹⁵ to fight¹⁶ whenever they wish.¹⁷ But before they reach² the wall, they see a man riding¹⁸ at full speed and shouting,¹⁸ "Wait! Do not advance¹⁹ until you hear²⁰ my story." So they halted²¹ and waited until he dismounted¹² from his horse. And immediately he began to speak as follows: —

¹ Use the accusative and preposition as in text.

² 130.

³ One word (147).

⁴ 159. I.

⁵ *ὥς* and future participle (159. 5).

⁶ 94.

⁷ Recast: *Menon was happening advancing*, 165.

⁸ 64.

⁹ *The king's men: those with the king*, 11.

¹⁰ 159.

¹¹ 146.

¹² 129.

¹³ 148.

¹⁴ Omit.

¹⁵ 156.

¹⁶ Use *ὥστε*, 154.

¹⁷ 128. III.

¹⁸ 159. 8.

¹⁹ 102.

²⁰ 129; 130.

²¹ 132.

"It happens that I am¹ a soothsayer, and am able to tell the truth to both friend and foe. The Greeks will not fight within ten days, as they have² neither horses nor men. So that halting³ is better for us⁴ now than advancing,³ and I say this from knowledge.⁵ If I am not speaking the truth, do to me⁶ whatever you will.⁷"

Immediately there is great confusion. The horsemen stop talking⁸ and spring upon their horses, wishing⁹ to fall upon¹⁰ the foe at once. But the king, who is present in person,¹¹ as it chances,¹ begs them not to advance,¹⁰ as Cyrus evidently¹² has given up¹² the idea¹² of crossing¹³ the canal.

EXERCISE LXXX. [Anab. I. 8. 4, 5, 6, 7.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Then it seemed best to take¹⁴ their places. 2. Clearchus wished to hold¹⁰ the right wing. 3. But Menon tried to prevent¹⁰ him from crossing¹⁵ the river. 4. Commanding⁸ the left was very easy for Menon,⁴ as he was² a fine general. 5. But the right was very difficult to command.¹⁶ 6. He ordered some of the Paphlagonian cavalry to take¹⁰ a position over by Cyrus.¹⁷ 7. He did this in¹⁸ great haste at¹⁹ the command of Cyrus.¹⁹ 8. The Persians were standing there wearing²⁰ helmets and breastplates. 9. They advanced in great haste to

¹ Cp. LXXVIII. 14.

² 159. 2.

³ 145; 146.

⁴ 82.

⁵ From knowledge : knowing, 159. 2 and 4.

⁶ 54.

⁷ 128. III.

⁸ 164.

⁹ 159. 2 and 8.

¹⁰ 147.

¹¹ In person, αὐτός.

¹² Recast : Cyrus is evident having given up the idea, 166.

¹³ Cp. LXXVII. 5.

¹⁴ 146.

¹⁵ 153. Cp. LXXVII. 6.

¹⁶ 149.

¹⁷ Acc., as the verb implies motion.

¹⁸ With.

¹⁹ Recast, 160.

²⁰ 159. 8.

see¹ Cyrus. 10. Before he mounted² his horse, he ordered the horsemen to seize their swords. 11. When you have put on³ full armor, take your place on the left wing. 12. Whenever Clearchus leads⁴ the army, the Greeks are willing to march⁵ at full speed. 13. If you happen-on the barbarians,⁶ bid them advance⁵ with⁷ bared heads. 14. For we have resolved⁸ to put on our breastplates and fall-upon⁹ the Greek peltast force.⁶

EXERCISE LXXXI. [Anab. i. 8. 8, 9.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. It seems best to the king to proceed⁹ nation by nation. 2. Moreover he wished each nation to march⁵ in a solid square. 3. When night comes,¹⁰ the king will be seen. 4. We cannot prevent the Egyptians from taking¹¹ their wooden shields which-reach-from-head-to-feet.¹² 5. They came into sight a little¹³ later than the others.¹⁴ 6. Not until the enemy are¹⁵ in plain view will the horsemen run. 7. If they come¹⁶ nearer, running away¹⁷ will be safer. 8. Because it was evening,¹⁸ we could not see¹⁹ the mass of dust. 9. But we were perfectly able²⁰ to see²¹ the enemies' spear-points. 10. The hoplites were said to have given up¹⁹ the idea of arming.²² 11. O that Tissaphernes were willing²³ to lead⁵ the ranks!²⁴ 12. He never would take his place²⁵ for²⁶ battle with²⁷ head unprotected. 13. For he is a fine general,

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| ¹ 150. | ⁸ Metaphrase: <i>For</i> | ¹⁸ 88. | ²¹ 149. |
| ² 154. | <i>it seems best to us having</i> | ¹⁴ 70. | ²² Cp. LXXVII. 5. |
| ³ 159. I. | <i>put on the breastplates</i> | ¹⁵ 129. | ²³ 109. |
| ⁴ 128. II. | <i>to fall upon.</i> | ¹⁶ 119. | ²⁴ 64. |
| ⁵ 147. | ⁹ 146. | ¹⁷ 145; 146. | ²⁵ 106. |
| ⁶ 94. | ¹⁰ 128. III. | ¹⁸ Cp. LXXXVI. 5. | ²⁶ <i>els.</i> |
| ⁷ Use a par- | ¹¹ 153. | ¹⁹ 148. | ²⁷ Cp. LXXX. 13. |
| ticiples. | ¹² One word. | ²⁰ Use <i>δυνατός</i> . | |

though¹ somewhat² stern to look upon.³ 14. While the lines⁴ were advancing,⁴ one of the hoplites came into sight wearing a cavalry helmet.

EXERCISE LXXXII. [Anab. 1. 8. 10, 11.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. It is not possible to endure⁵ the shouts of the Persians. 2. They were able to shout⁸ so that everybody might hear.⁶ 3. We, however, must go⁷ in silence and quietly. 4. Have you seen the so-called⁸ scythe-bearing chariots? 5. The scythes extend from the axles to cut⁹ in pieces the ranks of the Greeks. 6. If they fall-in-with¹⁰ any Greeks,¹¹ they will cut them to pieces. 7. Driving¹² so many chariots in front of the army is no¹³ easy (matter).¹⁴ 8. Nobody will wish to deceive¹⁵ the enemy unless he is himself deceived. 9. Cyrus¹⁶ has many pretexts for raising¹⁷ armies. 10. He collected an army to besiege¹⁸ Miletus before his brother heard of it.¹⁹ 11. Those nations would not be able²⁰ to advance²¹ without noise. 12. They went slowly in order to march¹⁸ with even step. 13. In this (matter),¹⁴ however, they seem to have been deceived.²¹ 14. Whenever the chariots drive²² against the foe, there is nothing to prevent⁹ the scythes striking²³ them.

¹ Sc. *being*, 159. 7.

² 74, 50.

⁸ 149.

⁴ 160.

⁵ 146.

⁶ 132; 154.

⁷ Recast, 146.

⁸ 156.

⁹ 159. 5.

¹⁰ 119.

¹¹ 94.

¹² 145; 146.

¹³ *Not*.

¹⁴ Omit.

¹⁵ 147.

¹⁶ 83.

¹⁷ 151; 59.

¹⁸ *ωs* and future partic.,

159. 5.

¹⁹ 130; 154.

²⁰ 106.

²¹ 148.

²² 128. III.

²³ 153.

EXERCISE LXXXIII. [Anab. i. 8. 4-11.]

Study carefully the examples under the Summary of Grammar, 144-154.

Written Exercise. — Before I say¹ anything more about Cyrus's expedition against his brother, I want to tell² you how the troops were arranged³ when the king⁴ held⁴ a review before Sardis. At about (the time of)⁵ full market he sent messengers at full speed to all the commanders to say in Persian, "The king wishes you to assemble² in⁶ the park prepared for battle.⁷"

Immediately there was great confusion. For on account of the nearness of the enemy⁸ the soldiers feared that there would be⁹ a battle at once. Accordingly they put on¹⁰ their breastplates, leaped upon their horses, and seizing¹⁰ their javelins ran in great haste to take¹¹ their places.

Persian cavalry are said to have been stationed¹² on the right wing, while¹³ the so-called¹⁴ Greek peltast force was posted on the left. The king ordered his own six thousand to hold² the center. They were tall men, and handsome to look upon.¹⁵ They were armed with golden breastplates and bronze helmets, and rode on¹⁶ horses with¹⁷ bronze thigh-pieces.

Besides (these)⁵ there were about two hundred chariots armed¹⁴ with scythes, which the enemy feared as likely to cut through⁵ the ranks. But before the chariots began¹ to advance, the leaders gave orders to prevent² their

¹ 130.⁷ Cp. LXXVIII. 5.¹⁸ δέ.² 147.⁸ Recast: *on account of the*¹⁴ 156.³ 143.*the enemy to be near.*¹⁵ 149.⁴ 160.⁹ 113.¹⁶ *Rode on: were carried by.*⁵ Omit.¹⁰ 159. 1.¹⁷ *Having, 159. 8.*⁶ *els.*¹¹ 150.¹² 148.

advance.¹ In fear² the enemy immediately stopped going forward³ and evidently gave⁴ up the idea of fighting⁵ on that day.

EXERCISE LXXXIV. [Anab. I. 8. 12, 13.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Clearchus is leading his force against the Persian⁶ center. 2. He says that he is leading⁷ against their right. 3. As he goes,⁸ he sees the crowded mass in the center.⁸ 4. Cyrus, while this⁹ was going on,⁹ was outside the Greek left. 5. The enemy say that Cyrus's men are⁷ outside the left wing. 6. If they should conquer¹⁰ this, all would be accomplished. 7. For the king says that he is⁷ superior in numbers.¹¹ 8. Clearchus is not willing to withdraw¹² his force from the river. 9. For he said that the king was⁷ there. 10. Are you willing to advance¹² slowly? 11. I will not withdraw the wing until you say¹³ that you will come.⁷ 12. But the interpreter's horse refused¹⁴ to go, because he saw² so many chariots advancing.¹⁵ 13. As they listened¹⁵ they saw Cyrus leading¹⁵ his army against the center. 14. He was handsome to look upon¹⁶ and seemed able to make¹⁷ his men obedient.¹⁸

EXERCISE LXXXV. [Anab. I. 8. 14, 15, 16.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. I fear that we shall be surrounded,¹⁹ if Cyrus does that. 2. He says that the Greek

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| ¹ <i>Their advance: them to advance, 153.</i> | ⁷ 135; 137; 139; 140. | ¹⁸ 129. |
| ² 159. 2. | ⁸ Metaphrase: <i>Going he sees the middle mass</i> | ¹⁴ <i>Refused: not wished.</i> |
| ³ 164. | (159. 8). | ¹⁶ 159. 8. |
| ⁴ <i>Evidently gave: were evident giving.</i> | ⁹ 160. | ¹⁶ <i>To look upon: to be seen.</i> |
| ⁵ Cp. LXXVII. 5. | ¹⁰ 120. | ¹⁷ 149. |
| ⁶ <i>Persian: of the Persians.</i> | ¹¹ 89. | ¹⁸ 156. |
| | ¹² 147. | ¹⁸ 113; 119. |

force is riding by.¹ 3. They said that Xenophon came near¹ to ask² something. 4. Some³ are forming, while others³ are still coming up. 5. Those who⁴ are still coming up⁴ will form in the same place. 6. While Xenophon⁵ was saying⁵ this, Cyrus heard the watchword passing⁶ along. 7. Clearchus told him what the watchword was.⁷ 8. Before he asked⁸ this, Xenophon began to reply.⁹ 9. Cyrus happened to be present¹⁰ when he sacrificed.⁵ 10. He said that the watchword was already passing¹ through the ranks. 11. An Athenian youth happened to be¹⁰ with the army. 12. Cyrus stopped surveying¹¹ (the field)¹² when Xenophon approached. 13. He reined in (his horse)¹² so as to listen.⁸ 14. Clearchus said that the omens were¹ favorable.

EXERCISE LXXXVI. [Anab. I. 8. 17, 18, 19.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Cyrus said that he accepted¹ that watchword. 2. He will wonder who gives⁷ it out, if he hears it. 3. After saying¹³ that, they began to ride off⁹ to their own positions.¹⁴ 4. The two leaders¹⁵ are¹⁵ now two or three stades¹⁶ apart.¹⁵ 5. When Cyrus gives-the-order, charge to meet¹⁷ the foe.¹⁸ 6. While they⁵ were advancing,⁵ a part of the phalanx fell behind.¹⁹ 7. Whenever they began²⁰ to go⁹ on the run, all began-to-sing-the-paeon.²¹ 8. It is said that all beat¹ their shields²² against

¹ 139; 140.² 150 or 159. 5.³ Cp. IV. 3.⁴ 37; 157.⁵ 160.⁶ 159. 8.⁷ 143.⁸ 154.⁹ 148.¹⁰ 165.¹¹ 164.¹² Omit.¹³ 159. I.¹⁴ *Positions*, use the singular.¹⁵ The text has the dual, but the plural may be used.¹⁶ 51.¹⁷ Use *ἀντίος*, as in text.¹⁸ 92.¹⁹ *Was left behind.*²⁰ 128. II.²¹ Impf.²² *Beat with their shields against their spears.*

their spears.¹ 9. Before the barbarians turned,² the Greeks began to flee. 10. If you should flee³ at full speed, the enemy would never catch you. 11. They said that somebody caused⁴ panic among⁵ the horsemen. 12. But they did not, as it happened,⁶ frighten all the horses. 13. I never wish to see⁷ a shield better than this (one).⁸ 14. Even if you wish,⁹ you never will see (one).⁸

EXERCISE LXXXVII. [Anab. i. 8. 12-19.]

Study carefully the examples under the Summary of Grammar, 135-137, 139, 140.

Written Exercise. — As Cyrus was riding along¹⁰ with some of the Greeks, he chanced to see¹¹ Pigres, his interpreter, leading a part¹² of the army. Immediately he said to Clearchus that the king was⁴ outside the left wing¹³ with all his cavalry. He said also that he feared⁴ that the king's men were superior¹⁴ in number¹⁵ to the Greeks,¹⁶ though¹⁷ the king¹⁷ himself was not able¹⁷ to inspire¹⁸ obedience¹⁹ in his troops; moreover, the soldiers of the enemy were shouting²⁰ with all their might, to cause²¹ panic in²² the Greek army.

To this Clearchus replied that he heard⁴ a noise²³ going²³ through the enemy's ranks and it seemed⁴ to be a watchword. "If²⁴ that is so,²⁴" said Cyrus, "we

¹ *Beat with their shields against their spears.*

² 154.

³ 120.

⁴ 139; 140.

⁵ *Caused among: made to.*

⁶ Recast, 165.

⁷ 147.

⁸ Omit.

⁹ 119.

¹⁰ 159. 8.

¹¹ 165.

¹² 71.

¹³ 77.

¹⁴ 113.

¹⁵ 89.

¹⁶ Not a dative, 71.

¹⁷ 160; 162.

¹⁸ 148.

¹⁹ 145; 147.

²⁰ What tense in the direct form?

²¹ *ωs* and fut. partic.

²² *In: to.*

²³ Cp. LXXXV. 6.

²⁴ 160.

must¹ all shout¹ as we do¹ to Enyalios and then sound¹ the paean and start against the foe. Whenever the two armies are² four stades apart, let us beat³ our spears³ and shields³ (together)⁴ and make a loud noise. But let us not begin the paean until the enemy are⁵ in plain sight." On hearing that, Clearchus said that it seemed⁶ to him to be a good (idea),⁴ and he would form⁶ the Greek force at once.

EXERCISE LXXXVIII. [Anab. 1. 8. 20, 21.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Cyrus was pleased when he saw⁷ that the Greeks were pursuing⁸ the enemy. 2. For he did not know what the king would do.⁹ 3. He did not think that his brother would fight.¹⁰ 4. Whenever the chariots rushed² through the lines, the men opened ranks. 5. They said that not a man of all the Greeks suffered¹⁰ any (harm).⁴ 6. In this battle one of the hoplites was hit with an arrow. 7. Those about Cyrus already saluted him as king. 8. But Menon watches-to-see what the others will do.⁹ 9. For he knows that Clearchus⁸ holds⁸ the right wing. 10. And he hears that the king's men⁸ are superior⁸ to us¹¹ in numbers.¹¹ 11. We think that we shall suffer¹⁰ some harm.¹² 12. It was said that a man was run down¹³ by the chariots.¹⁴ 13. If you are frightened,¹⁵ you will be overtaken. 14. But as it chanced,¹⁶ not even that man came to harm.

¹ Metaphrase: *It is necessary us all having shouted what we shout... to sound the paean.*

² 128. II.

³ Cp. LXXXVI. 8.

⁴ Omit.

⁵ 130.

⁶ 139; 140.

⁷ 159. I.

⁸ 166; 141.

⁹ 143.

¹⁰ 138; 141.

¹¹ Cp. LXXXIV. 7.

¹² *Some harm: something.*

¹³ 140.

¹⁴ 76.

¹⁵ 119.

¹⁶ Recast: *But not even that happened having suffered nothing.*

EXERCISE LXXXIX. [Anab. 1. 8. 22, 23.]

For Oral Translation.—1. He says ¹ that you hold ² the Greek center. 2. But we know that Cyrus himself commands ³ it.⁴ 3. I knew that I was ⁵ faithful to the king. 4. Leaders are safest when they hold ⁶ the center of their own (troops).⁶ 5. He says that if their force is ⁷ on both sides of them, the leaders are ⁷ safe. 6. He said that the leaders would be ⁷ safe if their force should be ⁷ on both sides of them. 7. If they ever desire to give an order,⁸ the army hears it in half the time.⁹ 8. Xenophon said ¹⁰ that if they ever desired to give an order, the army heard it in half the time. 9. We know that the king is ³ outside our left wing.¹¹ 10. But he is wheeling about with-a-view-to-surrounding¹² (us).⁶ 11. He declares that if nobody fights ⁷ him he will wheel-about for a flank-movement.¹² 12. I think that the king is ¹³ now in safety. 13. He wishes to know ¹⁴ whether you are ¹⁵ able to command ¹⁶ the wing.⁴ 14. So that if we are in safety, whom need ¹⁷ we fear?

EXERCISE XC. [Anab. 1. 8. 20-23.]

Study carefully the examples under the Summary of Grammar, 138, 141-143, 166.

Written Exercise.—When the deserters¹⁸ from the king's army came to us by night,¹⁹ they told us²⁰ that the

¹ Use *φημι*.² 139.³ 166.⁴ 64.⁵ 128. II.⁶ Omit.⁷ 142.⁸ *To order something.* (§ 23).⁹ G. 1194.¹⁰ Use either *λέγω* or *φημι*, but notice that this sentence is an indirect quotation of the preceding.¹¹ 77.¹² See the idiom of text¹³ 138.¹⁴ 147.¹⁵ 143.¹⁶ 149.¹⁷ 132. Recast the clause.¹⁸ 157.¹⁹ 67.²⁰ 79.

Persians¹ had² many war-chariots which³ they used⁴ in all their battles. They said also that some⁵ were² (those)⁶ of the enemy, captured⁷ while rushing⁸ through the ranks without⁹ drivers, others⁵ the Cilician king had given² them¹⁰ while they⁸ were marching⁸ through his province.

The Persians evidently¹¹ thought¹¹ that the Greeks would be startled¹² at the sight of¹³ so many chariots, for in another battle, you remember,¹⁴ they were frightened, though¹⁵ they received¹⁵ not a bit of harm.¹⁶ They knew, too, that light-armed troops are easily frightened¹¹ by men¹⁷ who pursue¹⁷ at full speed on horseback. If you think that Cyrus was pleased¹² by what¹⁸ the deserters reported,⁴ you are mistaken.

When he saw that the king's men were watching-to-see¹¹ what he would do,¹⁹ knowing²⁰ that the Persian center was¹¹ stronger than his own, he decided²¹ to send²² half his force against the king's right, and to order²² the rest to wait²³ outside the left wing until they should hear²⁴ the watchword²⁵ going through the ranks. Then if the king should wheel-about²⁶ for a flank-movement, he would speedily be surrounded on both sides.

¹ 83.² 137; 141.³ 86.⁴ 142.⁵ 27.⁶ Omit.⁷ 156.⁸ 159. 8.⁹ *Deprived of*, 65.¹⁰ 79.¹¹ 166.¹² 138; 139.¹³ *At the sight of: seeing.*¹⁴ δῆ.¹⁵ 159. 7; 162.¹⁶ *Received not a bit of harm: not even suffered nothing*, 172.¹⁷ 157.¹⁸ 90; 42.¹⁹ 143.²⁰ 159. 2.²¹ *It seemed best to him.*²² 146.²³ 147.²⁴ 129.²⁵ 64.²⁶ 120.

EXERCISE XCI. [Anab. i. 8. 24, 25, 26.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. Cyrus feared that the king would get¹ in his rear. 2. We must turn² the six thousand in flight. 3. The Greek force must be cut in pieces.² 4. If the king wheels-round,³ he will cut us in pieces. 5. He will not attack those who are victorious.⁴ 6. A few must be left behind² to guard⁵ the camp. 7. If the king should see⁶ us pursuing,⁷ he would not stand it. 8. But if he thinks he cannot⁸ stand⁹ this, let him propose¹⁰ something else. 9. If he sees³ his brother, he will rush at him. 10. Ctesias said that Cyrus wounded¹¹ the king through his breastplate. 11. I myself know that Ctesias cured¹² him. 12. Because of their eagerness¹³ to pursue,⁹ nobody at all¹⁴ was left with the king. 13. We must pursue² rapidly, in order not to be left behind. 14. If Cyrus had not rushed¹⁵ upon his brother, he would not have been cut to pieces.

EXERCISE XCII. [Anab. i. 8. 27, 28, 29.]

For Oral Translation. — 1. As the six hundred¹⁶ had started¹⁶ in pursuit, Cyrus was left behind. 2. As he rushed¹⁷ upon his brother, he was struck by a javelin. 3. As the two brothers¹⁶ were fighting,¹⁶ Ctesias chanced to be present.¹⁸ 4. He was always with the king when he was fighting.¹⁹ 5. It is said that Cyrus and his bravest leaders perished.²⁰ 6. I cannot tell you how many fell²¹ in-

¹ *Get: become*, 113.⁷ 159. 8.¹² 166.¹⁸ 165.² 168; 169.⁸ 138.¹⁸ 151.¹⁹ 128. II., but³ 119.⁹ 148.¹⁴ 172.

cp. 159. 8.

⁴ 157.¹⁰ Use συμβουλεύω,¹⁵ 118.²⁰ 139, 140.⁵ Use ὥστε.

100.

¹⁶ 160.²¹ 143.⁶ 120.¹¹ 139; 141.¹⁷ 159. 1.

defense-of¹ Cyrus. 7. One man drew his sword² and slew himself upon Cyrus.⁸ 8. We know that the king ordered⁴ him to do this. 9. We⁵ all must honor⁶ Artapates for his fidelity. 10. For (it was)⁷ he (who),⁷ when he saw² that Cyrus was dying,⁴ leaped from his horse to fight⁸ for¹ him. 11. I have heard that the Persian nobles wear⁴ bracelets and necklaces. 12. Do you know whether the king also honored⁹ his friends for their fidelity? 13. When the king saw² that Cyrus's men were pursuing,⁴ he shouted "We⁵ must pursue.⁶ We⁵ must lead⁶ against the men, before they escape.¹⁰"

EXERCISE XCIII. [Anab. I. 8. 24-29.]

Written Exercise. — It is said that the most faithful of Cyrus's followers¹¹ was¹² Artapates, one of the so-called¹³ chamberlains. When Cyrus halted before the center¹⁴ of the army, fearing¹⁵ that the king would attack¹⁶ before the Greeks should be formed¹⁰ for battle, Artapates rode forward² and said, "Cyrus, we must go⁶ against the right wing first of all. Neither the center nor the left of the king's army has started out for the attack.¹⁷ So we must lead⁶ against the right."

"Well,¹⁸ let it be so. Whenever I give¹⁹ the word Forward march,²⁰ you must all start.⁶ Let every man rush at full speed. Strike the men, wound (them and)⁷ drive (them)⁷ to their camp. Unless²¹ we do this, not-a-man²²

¹ ὑπέρ.⁷ Omit.¹⁸ 156.¹⁹ 128. III.² 159. I.⁸ 159. 5.¹⁴ 25.²⁰ Use πορεύομαι.³ 94.⁹ 143.¹⁵ 159. 2.²¹ If not, 171.⁴ 166.¹⁰ 130.¹⁶ 113.²² Metaphrase: No-⁵ 84.¹¹ Those about Cyrus.¹⁷ 145.

body of us not will be

⁶ 169.¹² 140.¹⁸ ἀλλά.

left.

of us will be left.¹ For neither² the king nor³ his men will be willing (for)³ us to go away⁴ victorious.⁵”

When the men heard⁶ this, they charged and fought, and many of them were slain. And that faithful Artapates drew⁶ his sword and slew himself upon his dead⁵ leader. For he was so faithful that he did not care⁷ to live⁴ after⁸ Cyrus had fallen.⁸

EXERCISE XCIV. [Anab. i. Chap. i.]

Written Exercise. — When Darius⁸ was sick,⁸ one⁹ of his two sons¹⁰ was with him,¹¹ but the other,⁹ the younger, as it chanced,¹² was away in his province. The king accordingly sent for him, and he arrived before his father died,¹³ with¹⁴ his friend Tissaphernes¹⁵ and Xenias and three hundred Greek infantry. On the death⁸ of Darius⁸ Artaxerxes became king and immediately arrested Cyrus, thinking¹⁶ to dishonor¹⁶ him; for he knew that the latter was plotting¹⁷ against him¹⁸ in order to be king¹⁹ himself.

Cyrus, however, was sent back to his province by his mother, but did not set out until he had disposed²⁰ many, both Greeks and barbarians, to be⁷ friendly to him²¹ and hostile to the king.²¹ On arriving⁶ at his province, he immediately sent to his friends, asking¹⁴ them²² to raise

¹ Metaphrase: *Nobody of us not will be left.*

² 171.

³ Omit.

⁴ 147.

⁵ 156.

⁶ 159. 1.

⁷ 132.

⁸ 160.

⁹ 27.

¹⁰ 63.

¹¹ *Was-with-him*, one word.

¹² 165.

¹³ 130.

¹⁴ 159. 8.

¹⁵ 8.

¹⁶ 159. 5; 162.

¹⁷ 166. The direct form is, “he is plotting.”

¹⁸ 94.

¹⁹ 159. 5 or 110.

²⁰ 129.

²¹ 93.

²² 64.

armies. To one he said that he wished¹ to besiege Miletus, to another that Tissaphernes was plotting¹ against the Ionian cities, to a third (he said) that the Pisidians were causing¹ trouble to his² province. And whenever he heard³ that a friend was⁴ an exile or hard-pressed⁴ at home, he would send⁵ him troops and their⁶ pay, so that when he should be prepared⁷ they might be at hand,⁸ willing⁹ to fight against the king.

In this way five armies were assembled, but the king was not aware that Cyrus had designs¹⁰ against him^{2, 11}; for whenever the tributes came in¹² from the provinces, Cyrus always sent them in to the king as if he were¹³ still friendly.

EXERCISE XCV. [Anab. i. Chap. 2.]

Written Exercise. — Not many days¹⁴ after that, Cyrus called together¹⁵ his generals and told them that he had at last decided¹⁶ to march inland. "But we must take¹⁷ as a pretext," said he, "that we wish to make an expedition against the Pisidians. For I have heard that they are causing⁴ trouble to my province." So he ordered all his leaders to get together¹⁵ their armies and meet¹⁸ him at¹⁸ Sardis. But¹⁹ it so happened that Tissaphernes found out¹⁹ about this plot and promptly advised the king to make-

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| ¹ 140. What tense? | ⁸ 110; 142. | ¹⁵ 159. 1. |
| ² 33. | ⁹ 156. | ¹⁶ Metaphrase : <i>At-</i> |
| ³ 128. II. | ¹⁰ <i>Was plotting against,</i> | <i>ready it seemed best to</i> |
| ⁴ 166. | 166; 148. | <i>him, 139; 140.</i> |
| ⁵ <i>Would send,</i> use the | ¹¹ 94. | ¹⁷ <i>Make, 169.</i> |
| impf. | ¹² Use <i>γλυφουαι</i> and | ¹⁸ <i>To be present for him</i> |
| ⁶ 59. | cp. 128. II. | <i>into.</i> |
| ⁷ 142. What would be | ¹³ 159. 6. | ¹⁹ Recast this sentence |
| the direct form? | ¹⁴ 88. | and cp. 165. |

counter-preparations. Cyrus, however, before the king heard of¹ his expedition, had already crossed² the Maeander, and was marching through Phrygia. When he reached the large city³ of Celaenae,³ he made a review of all his men in a large park which⁴ the great king had there.⁴

After staying² there thirty days⁵ he marched on many parasangs⁵ to Caÿster-plain; there the soldiers went to Cyrus and demanded their pay, which had been due for three months.⁵ Cyrus would not have been able⁶ to pay his men,⁷ if the Cilician Epyaxa had⁸ not by chance⁹ arrived⁸ and given him large sums of¹⁰ money. This lady was anxious¹¹ to see Cyrus's army, as her husband had heard¹² that it was very large, so that he was afraid¹³ that Cyrus would invade¹⁴ Cilicia.

Accordingly Cyrus held a review of his armies both for the sake of pleasing¹⁵ the queen¹⁶ and also to inspire¹⁶ in¹⁷ the barbarians fear of his army. Then they went over¹⁸ the mountains into Cilicia, and Cyrus met the king¹⁹ of the Cilicians, Syennesis, who promised to be²⁰ faithful to him and gave him many gifts for himself and money for²¹ the army.

¹ 130.

² 159. 1.

³ The Greek says *Celaenae, a large city*.

⁴ Metaphrase: *To the king being there*.

⁵ 51.

⁶ 107.

⁷ 79.

⁸ 118.

⁹ 165.

¹⁰ *Large sums of: much.*

¹¹ *Was anxious: wished.*

¹² 134.

¹³ 132.

¹⁴ 113.

¹⁵ Metaphrase: *On account of the to please, 151.*

¹⁶ 80.

¹⁷ *To make to.*

¹⁸ *Through.*

¹⁹ 94.

²⁰ Words of promising and swearing take the infinitive, generally future.

²¹ *etc.*

EXERCISE XCVI. [Anab. I. Chap. 3.]

Written Exercise. — Cyrus was obliged¹ to remain a long time² in Tarsus because the soldiers refused³ to go forward. Clearchus evidently⁴ wished⁴ to compel his men to proceed, for he told them in many words⁵ how Cyrus had honored⁶ him and given⁶ him many gifts. When, however, he was not able to persuade the soldiers to go with Cyrus,⁷ he decided⁸ to follow⁹ the men wherever they chose¹⁰ to go. He thought that the other soldiers would commend¹¹ him if he should do¹² this, and he was not mistaken in this.¹³ For many of them left their leaders before Cyrus learned¹⁴ what¹⁵ had happened. He naturally was grieved on hearing¹⁶ it, thinking¹⁷ that he was being wronged¹¹ by Clearchus.¹⁸ For everybody knows that Cyrus was¹⁹ always a good friend to whomsoever he wished to be a friend.

However, after hearing from Clearchus²⁰ what he thought²¹ ought¹¹ to be done,⁹ the leaders sent men to ask²² Cyrus for what¹³ he wished²¹ to use the army. For they already suspected that he was going¹¹ against his brother. Of course they could not ask guides²³ of Cyrus²³ to lead²⁴ them home; for in that case²⁵ they would be wrecking²⁶ his expedition. And they could never get off²⁶ without²⁷ his knowledge.²⁷ So they decided⁸ to find

¹ Recast.² 51.³ Cp. the expression used in A. I. 3. I.⁴ Recast (cp. 166).⁵ 86.⁶ Use the aor. (cp. 143).⁷ 94.⁸ *It seemed best to him.*⁹ 146.¹⁰ 127; 142.¹¹ 138; 139.¹² 142.¹³ 49.¹⁴ 130.¹⁵ 157.¹⁶ 159. I.¹⁷ 159. 2.¹⁸ 76.¹⁹ 166.²⁰ 69.²¹ 143.²² 159. 5.²³ 53.²⁴ III.²⁵ *In that case: so.*²⁶ 106.²⁷ 165.

out¹ whether the undertaking was² greater than the³ former (one),⁴ and either follow¹ Cyrus as friends or depart¹ in safety, if that should be possible.⁵

Cyrus replied to those⁶ who came⁶: "I will give you⁷ all more pay than⁸ you had before, if you will follow⁹ me wherever I go.¹⁰ But you must choose¹¹ now whether you are willing² to go on or prefer² to stay."

EXERCISE XCVII. [Anab. I. Chap. 4.]

Written Exercise.—After Cyrus had made¹² the soldiers⁷ these¹² promises, he went-marching-on until he reached¹³ the gates between Cilicia and Syria. He thought that he should find¹⁴ the gates guarded¹⁵ by the king's troops, but they had fled, and Cyrus passed into Syria. When he¹⁶ came¹⁶ to Myriandus, two of his¹⁷ best generals took¹⁸ ship and sailed away, thinking¹⁹ to return¹⁹ to Greece. However, Cyrus said that he would not pursue¹⁴ them; that nobody might say²⁰ that he used²¹ a man while he was²² with him, but wronged²¹ him if he wished²² to go away.

As Cyrus went on from there, he came to a river, Chalus by name.²³ This was full of tame fish,²⁴ which are said to be considered²⁵ gods²⁶ by the Syrians. Not many days²⁷ after this Cyrus called the generals together²⁸ and told them at last that he wished¹⁴ to kill his brother

¹ 146.⁸ Sc. *what* (70; 42).¹⁵ 156.²² 142.² 143.⁹ 119.¹⁶ 160.²³ 49.³ 70.¹⁰ 128. III.¹⁷ 85.²⁴ 65.⁴ Omit.¹¹ 169.¹⁸ *Having entered*²⁵ 148.⁵ 120.¹² Metaphrase: *Prom-
ised these things.**into*, 159. 1.²⁶ 7.⁶ 157.¹⁹ *ωs* and 159. 5.²⁷ 88.⁷ 79.¹³ 129.²⁰ 110.²⁸ 159. I¹⁴ 138; 139.²¹ 140.

and become king instead of him. The soldiers, however, refused¹ to go until Cyrus again promised² to give³ them greater pay. You have read by what words⁴ Menon persuaded⁵ his men to cross the river Euphrates before the others decided⁶ what they were to do.⁷ You know, too, that Cyrus was pleased,⁸ and praised Menon and his men so that they were⁹ in fine hopes of being honored¹⁰ more than the other soldiers.¹¹ When this¹² was done,¹² all crossed the river; not, however, by boats,⁴ for Abrocomas had taken¹³ all that Cyrus¹⁴ had¹⁵ and burned them to keep¹⁶ Cyrus from crossing.¹⁶

EXERCISE XCVIII. [Anab. i. Chap. 5.]

Written Exercise. — As the expedition¹² of Cyrus journeyed¹² through Arabia, they captured many of the wild animals which¹⁷ they found. On arriving at Corsote, they told the inhabitants that it was not possible¹⁸ to capture¹⁹ the ostriches, for they ran¹⁸ very fast, so that the horsemen could²⁰ not approach them. Some²¹ of the cities along the Euphrates were full of food,²² and the soldiers were able to forage. But some^{14,21} had no food, not even fodder for the horses²³; so that Cyrus made²⁴ three days' marches²⁵ very long, in order to reach food or water.

Once, as they were going²⁶ through a narrow place, two of Cyrus's men were ordered to jump¹³ into the mud and

- | | | | |
|------------------------------|--|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| ¹ See XCVI. n. 3. | ⁷ <i>What it was necessary to do.</i> | ¹⁴ 83. | ²¹ 27. |
| ² 129. | ⁸ 166. | ¹⁵ 156. | ²² 65. |
| ³ Fut. infin. | ⁹ 132. | ¹⁶ Recast, 110. | ²³ 82. |
| ⁴ 86. | ¹⁰ 151. | ¹⁷ 42. | ²⁴ <i>Marched.</i> |
| ⁵ 143. | ¹¹ 71. | ¹⁸ 139; 140. | ²⁵ 48. |
| ⁶ 130. | ¹² 160. | ¹⁹ 146. | ²⁶ 159. 8. |
| | ¹³ 159. 1. | ²⁰ 132; 142. | |

help get the wagons out. But Cyrus thought that they were working¹ slowly, so he said, "I² must order³ my nobles to throw off⁴ their crimson cloaks and extricate the wagons." But before the others replied,⁵ it was seen that Glus was rushing⁶ to the spot, throwing off⁷ his cloak even as he ran.⁷ Cyrus was evidently delighted⁸ at the sight,⁹ for he was-in-a-hurry to come upon¹⁰ the king¹¹ unprepared.

In another place Clearchus and Menon were very angry with each other¹² because one of the latter's men had been beaten¹³ by Clearchus. You remember that the men themselves were enraged⁸ and threw stones¹⁴ and other¹⁴ (things)¹⁵ at Clearchus.¹⁶ Cyrus, however, happened to ride up¹⁷ before his best friend was killed,⁵ and made both (parties)¹⁵ stop¹⁸ fighting and retire¹⁸ to their positions. He took care that such (a thing)¹⁵ should never happen¹⁹ again.

EXERCISE XCIX. [Anab. i. Chap. 6.]

Written Exercise. — In-the-first-place (there)¹⁵ happened to be¹⁷ in Cyrus's army a Persian who loved the king much better (than)¹⁵ Cyrus.²⁰ If (he had)¹⁵ not, he would not have plotted²¹ to take⁴ as many men as possible²² and desert¹⁰ to the enemy. But a letter which he wrote was given, by a man²³ whom Orontas considered faithful, to the very²⁴

¹ 138; 139.

² 84.

³ 169.

⁴ 159. 1.

⁵ 130.

⁶ Metaphrase: *Glus appeared rushing.*

⁷ 159. 8.

⁸ 166.

⁹ Express by a partic.

¹⁰ 110.

¹¹ 94.

¹² 92.

¹³ Use the aor. (134).

¹⁴ 86.

¹⁵ Omit.

¹⁶ 46.

¹⁷ 165.

¹⁸ Use *ᾠστε* and infin.

(132).

¹⁹ 112.

²⁰ 70.

²¹ 107; 118.

²² Cp. XI. 9.

²³ *A man, τὸς.*

²⁴ 32.

man whose expedition he was trying to ruin. When Cyrus¹ had read¹ the letter to his most trusty generals — both Greek and Persian — they advised (him)² to summon³ Orontas to⁴ a trial. When all¹ had assembled,¹ Cyrus sent for Orontas and told those present⁵ that in the first place his⁶ father had given⁷ Orontas to him⁸; but later (at)² Artaxerxes's¹ bidding,¹ the man had made war⁷ on him with the inhabitants⁶ of Sardis, but finally had stopped fighting⁹ and had given⁷ and received⁷ pledges. Then in the hearing¹⁰ of all he asked Orontas if he had not revolted¹¹ to the Mysians, and, though not at all wronged¹² by Cyrus, was detected¹³ a second and a third time plotting¹³ against him.

Orontas admitted all this, and when Cyrus bade the generals express their opinions, all advised putting³ him out of the way as soon as possible. "If you assent¹⁴ to this opinion," said Cyrus to the relatives of Orontas who were present,¹⁵ "you must rise¹⁶ and seize¹⁷ the man by the girdle.¹⁸" Then all rose, for they knew that Orontas, though¹² a Persian noble, was¹⁹ worthy of death.²⁰ But nobody knows where or how he died.¹¹

EXERCISE C: [Anab. I. Chap. 7.]

Written Exercise. — After Cyrus and his army had marched for three days,²¹ they halted again, and a review of

¹ 160.² Omit.³ 148 (cp. 48).⁴ *els.*⁵ 157.⁶ 14.⁷ Use the aor., 139; 140.⁸ 34.⁹ 164.¹⁰ Recast, 160.¹¹ 143.¹² 159. 7; 162.¹³ *Was evident plotting.*¹⁴ 119.¹⁵ 156.¹⁶ 159. 1.¹⁷ 169.¹⁸ 64.¹⁹ 166.²⁰ 66.²¹ 51.

the entire¹ army took place. Although some² of the generals objected,² Cyrus³ thought best³ to hold⁴ the review at midnight, for the king was likely to appear on the following morning. After the review Cyrus heard from deserters⁵ that the king was⁶ already very near and prepared⁷ for battle.

"What shall I do⁸?" said Cyrus. "What can be better than to call together all¹ my Greeks and plan how I shall conduct⁹ the battle?"

So immediately he assembled¹⁰ the Greek leaders and told them that he considered⁶ them more valuable¹¹ than many Persians.¹² He told them also into what sort of a contest they were going,⁹ and what sort of men they would find⁹ the barbarians to be.¹³ He promised them¹⁴ that he would give¹⁵ them¹⁴ everything which they wished,¹⁶ if his plans¹⁷ succeeded.¹⁶ And when one¹⁸ of the men expressed¹⁸ a fear that Cyrus would not remember¹⁹ when the danger¹⁸ was past,¹⁸ he promised to make¹⁵ his friends — if they were²⁰ faithful — masters of all¹ the province²¹ of his brother.

Cyrus knew that his brother would fight,¹³ and was glad to hear²² before the battle how many troops the king²³ really had.⁹ It seemed best to advance with his army²⁴ drawn up,⁷ and he went on until he came²⁵ to the great trench which the king had made. Ten days, however, elapsed before the king's troops appeared,²⁶ and many of

¹ 26.² 160; 162.³ *To Cyrus it seemed.*⁴ 146.⁵ 69.⁶ 139; 140.⁷ 156.⁸ 104.⁹ 143.¹⁰ 159. 1.¹¹ *Worthy of more,*

66.

¹² 70.¹³ 166.¹⁴ 79.¹⁵ 141.¹⁶ 142.¹⁷ Metaphrase: *The of himself.*¹⁸ 160.¹⁹ 113.²⁰ 159. 6.²¹ 60.²² 159. 2.²³ 83.²⁴ 87. 51²⁵ 129.²⁶ 130.

Cyrus's friends said, "The king has given up the idea of fighting.¹" And some even marched carelessly, carrying² their arms on the wagons.

EXERCISE CI. [Anab. i. Chap. 8.]

Written Exercise. — As the Greeks were marching along in disorder, they heard a noise³ in the plain and saw a Persian horseman riding at full speed and shouting that the king was coming⁴ to fight.⁵ "I hope⁶ they will not fall upon⁶ us⁷ until we are⁸ in battle-line," said Clearchus, and in⁹ great haste ordered the hoplites to take their places.

The Greeks were thoroughly frightened, but it was afternoon before the enemy came¹⁰ near enough to be seen. Menon wondered whether¹¹ Tissaphernes commanded the cavalry³ as he was said (to do),¹² but soon they saw that he was leading¹³ the left wing. Next to the cavalry³ they saw the Egyptian hoplites with¹⁴ their long wooden shields, and other nations, each in a solid square. In front of all were those¹⁵ formidable war-chariots, which would cut-to-pieces¹⁶ whole battalions, both men and horses, if they chanced to meet them.⁷

Clearchus was afraid that the Greek line would be surrounded¹⁷ by the king's forces, so he did not obey Cyrus¹⁸ when he bade¹⁴ him lead against the enemy's center.

¹ Cp. LXXVII. 5.

² 158. 8.

³ 64.

⁴ 139; 140.

⁵ 159. 5.

⁶ 108.

⁷ 94.

⁸ 129.

⁹ *With.*

¹⁰ *Were (130) so near as to be seen (154).*

¹¹ *If, 125.*

¹² *Omit.*

¹³ 166.

¹⁴ 159. 8.

¹⁵ Use the article.

¹⁶ 120.

¹⁷ 113.

¹⁸ 80.

That¹ is the real reason why¹ Cyrus was defeated and killed; for when his Greeks² had turned² the king's men in flight and started out in-pursuit,³ Cyrus, knowing that the king in-person⁴ commanded⁵ the center⁶ of the Persians, rushed at once to find⁷ him. Then, as only-a-few⁸ of his six hundred were left⁹ about him, a Persian was able to wound him with a javelin, and he was slain, though the bravest² of his men leaped⁹ from their horses (and)¹⁰ fought² bravely for him.

¹ Metaphrase: *On account of this in-the-being Cyrus having been defeated.*

² 160.

³ *For the to pursue.*

⁴ *Αὐτός.*

⁵ 166.

⁶ 64.

⁷ 110.

⁸ One word.

⁹ 159. 1.

¹⁰ Omit.

3
2
1
f

ABBREVIATIONS

acc.	accusative.	opt.	optative.
act.	active.	partic.	participle.
adj.	adjective.	pass.	passive.
adv.	adverb.	pf.	perfect.
aor.	aorist.	plpf.	pluperfect.
conj.	conjunction.	pl., plur.	plural.
cp.	compare.	prep.	preposition.
dat.	dative.	pres.	present.
equiv.	equivalent.	pron.	pronoun.
etc.	<i>et cetera</i> , and so on.	sc.	<i>scilicet</i> , used when a word not in the text is to be sup- plied.
fut.	future.	sing.	singular.
i.e.	<i>id est</i> , that is.	subj.	{ subjective. subjunctive.
impf.	imperfect.	2 aor.	second aorist.
indic.	indicative.	2 pf.	second perfect.
infin.	infinitive.		
Lat.	Latin.		
mid.	middle.		
u., N.	note.		
obj.	objective.		

VOCABULARY

A

abandon, ἐκ-λείπω (λείπω, λέλοιπα, λέλειμαι, ἐλείφθην, ἔλιπον).

able, ἰκανός, ἡ, ὄν; be —, δύναμαι, δυνήσομαι, δεδύνημαι, ἐδυνήθην.

about, around, ἀμφί or περί with acc.; concerning, περί with gen.; about, in regard to, on, ἀμφί and acc.; with numerals, ὥς.

Abrocomas, Ἀβροκόμας, ᾱ (Doric gen.), ὁ.

abundant, πλείστος, ἡ, ον.

Abȳdos, Ἀβϋδος, ἡ.

accept, δέχομαι, δέξομαι, ἐδέξαμην, δέδεγμαι, ἐδέχθην.

accomplish, ποιέω.

accordingly, οὖν.

account (on — of), ἔνεκα with gen.

accrue, γίγνομαι, γενήσομαι, ἐγενόμην, γεγένημαι, γέγονα.

accuse falsely, δια-βάλλω (βαλῶ, ἔβαλον, βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην).

acquainted (become — with), συγγίγνομαι (γενήσομαι, ἐγενόμην, γεγένημαι, γέγονα).

acquire, κτάομαι, κτήσομαι, ἐκτησάμην, ἐκτέμην, ἐκτήθην.

acropolis, ἀκρόπολις, εως, ἡ.

act, ποιέω.

additional (demand), προσ-αιτέω.

admiral, ναύαρχος, ὁ.

admire, ἄγαμαι, ἡγασάμην, ἡγάσθην.

admit, ὁμολογέω, ὁμολογήσω, etc.

advance, ἐπι-χωρέω, ἐπ-εimi, πρό-εimi, πορεύομαι, ἐξ-ελαύνω.

advice (give), advise, συμ-βουλεύω, βουλεύσω, etc.

adviser, σύμβουλος, ὁ.

affairs (our), τὰ ἡμέτερα.

afraid (be), δέδοικα, ἔδεισα, δέδια; φοβοῦμαι, φοβήσομαι, etc.

after, μετά with acc.

afternoon, δεῖλη, ἡ.

afterwards, ὕστερον, μετὰ ταῦτα.

again, πάλιν.

against, πρὸς, ἐπί, or εἰς, with acc.; plot —, ἐπιβουλεύω.

agree to, προσ-τίθημι (θήσω, ἔθηκα and ἔθεμεν, τέθεικα, τέθειμαι, ἐτέθη).

aid, ὠφελέω, ὠφελήσω, etc.; with the — of, σύν and dat.

alive, ζῶν, partic. of ζάω, live.

all, πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν; ἅπας, σύμπας; of — kinds or sorts, παντοδαπός, ἡ, ὄν; παντοῖος, ᾱ, ον; — right, εἰς τὸ δέον; in —, σύμπαντες.

allow, εἰάω, εἰᾶσω, εἰᾶσα, εἰᾶκα, εἰᾶμαι, εἰᾶθην.

ally, σύμμαχος, ὁ.

along, παρά with acc.; take —, λαμβάνω, λήψομαι, ἔλαβον, εἴληφα, εἴλημαι, ἐλήφθην.

already, ἤδη.

- also, καί.
 although, καίπερ with concessive partic.
 always, αἰεί.
 ambush (lie in), ἐνεδρεύω, ἐνεδρεύσονται, ἐνήδρευσα, ἐνηδρεύθην.
 among, ἐν.
 anchor (be at), ὀρμέω.
 and, καί, δέ.
 angry (be), ὀργίζομαι, ὀργιόυμαι, etc.; χαλεπαίνω, χαλεπανῶ, ἐχαλέπηνα, ἐχαλεπάνθην.
 animal, θηρίον, τό.
 announce, ἀγγέλλω, ἀγγελῶ, ἡγγεῖλα, ἡγγεῖκα, ἡγγεῖμαι, ἡγγέλθην.
 another, ἄλλος, ἄλλη, ἄλλο.
 answer, ἀπο-κρίνομαι (κρινόυμαι, ἐκρινάμην, κέκριμαι).
 anxious (be), ἀξιώω, ἀξιώσω, etc.; βούλομαι, βουλήσομαι, βεβούλημαι, ἐβουλήθην.
 any, any one, anything, τίς, τί.
 anywhere, πού, enclitic.
 apart (be), δι-έχω (ἔξω and σχήσω, ἔσχηκα, ἐσχημαι, ἔσχον); — from, χωρίς and gen.
 Apollo, Ἀπόλλων, ωνος.
 apparently, ὥς, as, and partic. or phrase.
 appear, mid. of φαίνω, φανῶ, ἔφηναι, πέφηναι and πέφαγκα, πέφασμαι, ἐφάνθην and ἐφάνην.
 appoint, ποιέω, ποιήσω, etc.
 approach, πελάζω, πελάσω or πελῶ, ἐπέλασα, ἐπελάσθην.
 apt (more — to), μᾶλλον.
 Arabia, Ἀραβία, ἡ.
 Arcadian, Ἀρκάς, ἄδος, ὁ.
 Aristippus, Ἀριστιππος, ὁ.
 arm one's self, ὀπλίζομαι, ὀπλισάμην, ὤπλισμαι, ὤπλισθην.
 armor (put on full), ἐξ-οπλίζομαι.
 arms, ὄπλα, τά; stand or rest under —, τίθεμαι τὰ ὄπλα.
 army, στρατιά, στράτευμα.
 arrange, τάττω, τάξω, ἔταξα, τέταχα, τέταγμα, ἐτάχθην.
 array, τάττω; in battle —, in full —, συντεταγμένος.
 arrest, συλ-λαμβάνω (λήψομαι, εἴληφα, εἴλημαι, ἐλήφθην, ἔλαβον).
 arrive, ἀφ-ικνεόμαι. (ἵξομαι, ἱγμαι, ἰκόμην).
 arrow, τόξευμα, ματος, τό.
 Artagerse, Ἀρταγέρσης, ου.
 Artapates, Ἀρταπάτης, ου.
 Artaxerxes, Ἀρταξέρξης, ου.
 as, ὥς, ὅτι; often expressed by an appositive; — . . . — possible, ὥς or ὅτι with superlative; — follows, ᾧδε, τᾷδε, τοιαύδε; — well — anybody else, ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος.
 ashamed (be), αἰσχύνομαι, αἰσχυνόυμαι, ἤσχύνθην.
 ask, mid. of δέω, δεήσω, etc., with gen.; — for, αἰτέω, αἰτήσω, etc.
 ass, ὄνος, ὁ.
 assemble, ἀθροίζω, ἀθροίσω, etc.
 assembly, ἐκκλησιᾶ, ἡ.
 assent, προσ-τίθηναι (θήσω, ἔθηκα and ἔθεμεν, τέθεικα, τέθειμαι, ἐτέθην).
 assume command, στρατηγέω, στρατηγήσω, etc.
 at, ἐν; with verbs of motion, εἰς or πρὸς; — all (nobody), οὐδεὶς; — any rate, οὖν; — first, πρῶτον; — full speed, ἀνὰ κράτος; — hand (be), πάρ-ειμι; — home, οἴκοι; — last, ἥδη, τέλος; — once, εὐθύς; — war (be), πολεμέω.
 Athenian, Ἀθηναῖος, ὁ.
 attack, ἐπι-τίθεμαι (θήσομαι, τέθειμαι, ἐτέθην, ἐθέμην).
 attempt, πειράομαι, πειράσομαι, ἐπειράσάμην, πεπειράμαι, ἐπειράθην.
 attendants, οἱ περὶ (Ἐπύαζαν).
 attention (pay), προσ-έχω τὸν νοῦν.

avowedly, ὥς.

aware (be), αἰσθάνομαι, αἰσθήσομαι, ᾗσθημαι, ᾗσθόμην.

ax, ἄξινη, ἡ.

axle, ἄξων, ονος, ὁ.

B

Babylon, Βαβυλῶν, ὦνος, ἡ.

back again, πάλιν; bring —, καθίστημι, κατα-στήσω, κατ-έστησα, etc.; send —, ἀπο-πέμπω (πέμψω, etc.).

bad, κακός, πονηρός; be in a — way, κακῶς ἔχω.

banish, ἐκ-βάλλω (βαλῶ, βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην, ἐβαλον).

barbarian, βάρβαρος; adj., βαρβαρικός.

bare, bared, ψιλός.

barley, κριθή, generally plur.

battalion, τάξις, εως, ἡ.

battle, μάχη; in — array, in — line, συντεταγμένος.

be, εἶμι, γίγνομαι; with advs. ἔχω; — able, — afraid, angry, anxious, apart, ashamed, at hand, at war, aware, delighted, discouraged, displeased, distant, drawn up, due, enraged, grateful, grieved, ill, in the wrong, likely, made of, mistaken, necessary, obliged, of good cheer, off, on, on guard, pleased, present, related, sick, situated, stationed, sure, troubled, vexed, victorious, with, see under able, afraid, angry, etc.

bear, φέρω, οἶσω, ἤνεγκα, ἐνήνοχα, ἐνήνεγμαι, ἐνήχθην, ἤνεγκον.

beast, θηρίον, τό.

beat, pound, δυνάω, δυνήσω, etc.;

be beaten, defeated, ἡττάομαι, ἡττήσομαι, etc.

beating, πληγαί, αἱ.

beautiful, καλός.

because, ὅτι, ἐπεὶ.

because of, διὰ and acc.; ἕνεκα and gen.

become, γίγνομαι, γενήσομαι, γενένημαι, γέγονα, ἐγενόμην; — acquainted, συγγίγνομαι; — evident, φαίνομαι, φανερός or δῆλος γίγνομαι; — jealous, φιλοτιμέομαι, ἵσομαι, etc.

before, πρό; πρότερος, πρότερον, πρίν; — then, πρότερον, πρόσθεν.

beg, δέομαι, δεήσομαι, etc.; — off, ἐξ-αιτέομαι (αἰτήσομαι, etc.).

begin, ἄρχω, ἄρξω, ἤρξα, ἤργμαι, ἤρχθην.

behalf of (in), ὑπέρ and gen.

behind (leave), κατα-λείπω (λείψω, λέλοιπα, λείμμαι, ἐλείφθην, ἔλιπον).

belong, εἶμι.

beloved, φίλος.

besides, προσέτι.

besiege, πολιορκέω, πολιορκήσω, etc.

best (adv.), ἄριστα, κάλλιστα; seem —, δοκέω, δόξω, ἔδοξα, δέδογμαι, ἐδόχθην.

better, κρείττων; adv., μᾶλλον; get the — of, περιγίγνομαι, γενήσομαι, γενένημαι, γέγονα, ἐγενόμην.

between, μεταξύ, with gen.; space —, τὸ μέσον.

beyond, ὑπέρ and acc.

bid, κελεύω, κελεύσω, ἐκέλευσα, κεκέλευκα, κεκέλευσμαι, ἐκελεύσθην.

bidding (at the), partic. of κελεύω in gen. absolute.

birth, γένος, γένους, τό.

bit, μέρος (gen. μέρους) τι; not a —, οὐδέν; have a — of a dispute, ἀμφι-λέγειν τι.

bitter, χαλεπός.

blockade, πολιορκέω, πολιορκήσω, etc.

blow, σαλπίζω, ἐσάλπιγξα; πληγή, ἡ.

board (on), ἐπί and gen. ; with motion, εἰς.

boat, πλοῖον, τό.

border-town, πόλις ἑσχατή.

both, τε, καί ; ἀμφοτέρω ; on — sides, ἐκατέρωσε, ἐκατέρωθεν.

boy, παῖς, παιδός, ὁ.

bracelet, ψέλιον, τό.

brave, ἀγαθός.

bravely, ἀγαθῶς.

breastplate, θώραξ, θώρακος, ὁ.

bridge, γέφυρα, ἡ.

bring, ἄγω, ἄξω, ἦχα, ἦγμαι, ἦχθην, ἦγαγον ; — back, καθ-ίστημι (στήσω, ἔστησα, etc.) ; — with = come having.

bronze, χαλκοῦς, ἡ, οὖν.

brother, ἀδελφός, ὁ.

build, οἰκοδομέω, οἰκοδομήσω, etc.

burn, κᾶω, καύσω, ἔκαυσα, κέκαυκα, κέκαυμαι, ἐκαύθην.

but, ἀλλά, δέ ; — few, ὀλίγοι ; — a little, ὀλίγῳ.

buy, ὠνέομαι, ὠνήσομαι, ἐώνημαι, ἐωνήθην, ἐπριάμην ; — in return, ἀντ-αγοράζω.

by, ὑπό with gen. ; παρά with dat. and acc. ; κατά and acc. ; — means of, dat. of means.

C

call, καλέω, καλῶ, ἐκάλεσα, κέκληκα, κέκλημαι, ἐκλήθην ; — together, συγ-καλέω.

camp, στρατόπεδον, τό.

can, δύναμαι, δυνήσομαι, δεδύνημαι, ἐδυνήθην.

canal, διώρυξ, διώρυχος, ἡ.

cannot = not be able.

captain, λοχαγός, ὁ.

capture, θηρεύω, θηρεύσω, etc. ; λαμβάνω, λήψομαι, ἐλήφα, ἐλημμαι, ἐλήφθην, ἔλαβον.

care, βούλομαι, ἔθελω ; take —, ἐπιμελείομαι (μελήσομαι, etc.).

carelessly, ἡμελημένως.

carriage, ἄρμαμαξα, ἡς.

carry, ἄγω, ἄξω, ἦχα, ἦγμαι, ἦχθην, ἦγαγον.

castle, βασιλεια, τά.

Castölus, Καστωλός, ἡ.

catch, λαμβάνω, λήψομαι, ἐλήφα, ἐλημμαι, ἐλήφθην, ἔλαβον.

cause, ποιέω, ποιήσω, etc. ; παρ-έχω (ἔξω and σχήσω, ἔσχηκα, ἔσχημαι, ἔσχον).

cavalry, ἱππεῖς, οἱ ; adj., ἱππικός.

cave, ἄντρον, τό.

Caÿster plain, Καÿστρου πεδῖον.

cease, mid. of παύω, παύσω, etc.

Celaenae, Κελαιναί, αἱ.

celebrate with sacrifice, θύω.

center, μέσον, τό.

certain (a), τῖς.

Chalus, Χάλος, ὁ.

chamberlain, σκηπτοῦχος, ὁ.

chance, τυγχάνω, τεύξομαι, ἔτυχον, τετύχηκα ; by —, τυγχάνω and supplementary partic.

charge, ἐλαύνω, ἐπ-ειμι.

chariot, ἄρμα, ἄρματος, τό.

Charmandé, Χαρμάνδη, ἡ.

chase, διώκω, διώξω, ἐδίωξα, δεδίωχα, ἐδιώχθην.

Chersonese, Χερρόνησος, ἡ.

children, τέκνα, τά.

Chiriosophus, Χειρίσοφος, ὁ.

choose, mid. of αἰρέω, αἰρήσω, ἤρηκα, ἤρημαι, ἤρέθην, εἶλον.

Cilicia, Κιλικία, ἡ.

Cilician, Κιλιξ, Κιλικός, ὁ ; — lady or queen, Κιλισσα, ἡ.

circumstance, πρᾶγμα, τό.

citadel, ἀκρόπολις, εως, ἡ.

city, πόλις, πόλεως, ἡ.

Clearchus, Κλέαρχος, ὁ.

cliff, πέτρα, ἡ.

cloak, κάνδυσ, υος, ὁ.

cold, χειμών, χειμῶνος, ὁ.

collect, ἀθροίζω, ἀθροίσω, etc.

Colossae, Κολοσσαί, αἱ.

come, ἔκω (ἦξω) ; ἔρχομαι (ἐλήλυθα, ἦλθον) ; — to one's self, ἐν ἑαυτῷ γίγνομαι ; — back, ἦκω ; — near, πελάζω, πελάσω or πελώ, ἐπέλασα, ἐπελάσθην ; — into sight = be in plain sight ; — together, συγ-γίγνομαι (γενήσομαι, γεγένημαι, γέγονα, ἐγενόμην) ; — to harm, πιάσχω τι (πέλισομαι, πέπονθα, ἔπαθον) ; — up, ἀνα-βαίνω, προσ-έρχομαι ; — upon, ἐν-τυγχάνω ; — (upon the throne), καθ-ίστημι in mid., and 2 aor. act., with εἰς.

command, στρατηγία ; ἄρχω, ἄρξω, etc., and gen. ; κελεύω, κελεύσω, ἐκέλευσα, κεκέλευκα, κεκέλευσμαι, ἐκελεύσθην.

commander, ἄρχων, ἄρχοντας, ὁ.

commend, ἐπ-αινέω (αἰνέσω, ᾔνεσα, ᾔνεκα, ᾔνημαι, ᾔνέθην).

company, λόχος, ὁ.

compel, βιάζομαι, βιάσομαι, etc.

competent, ἱκανός.

comrade, συστρατιώτης.

concur, mid. of προσ-τίθην (θήσω, ἔθηκα and ἔθεμεν, τέθεικά, τέθειμαι, ἐτέθην).

condemnation (as a sign of) = for death.

conduct, ποιέω, ποιήσω, etc.

confidence in (have), πιστεύω, πισ-τεύσω, etc.

confusion, τάραχος, ὁ ; in —, ἄτακ-τος.

congratulate, εὐδαιμονίζω, εὐδαι-μονιῶ, ηὐδαιμόνισα.

conquer, νικάω, νικήσω, etc.

consider, νομίζω, νομιῶ, ἐνόμισα, etc.

contain, ἔχω, ἔξω and σχήσω, ἔσχηκα, ἔσχημαι, ἔσχον.

contest, ἀγών, ἀγῶνος, ὁ ; ἐρίζω, ἤρισα.

contribute, mid. of συμ-βάλλω (βαλῶ, βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλή-θην, ἔβαλον).

coöperate with, συμ-πράττω (πράξω, ἔπραξα, πέπραχα or πέπραγα, πέ-πραγμαι, ἐπράχθην), with dat.

Corsothé, Κορσωτή, ἡ.

counterpreparations (make), ἀντι-παρα-σκευάζομαι.

country, χώρα.

course (of), δῆ.

coward, cowardly, κακός.

crimson, φοινικεύς, ἡ, οὖν.

crisis (at this), ἐκ τούτων.

cross, δια-βαίνω (βήσομαι, βέβηκα, βέβημαι, ἐβάθην, ἔβην).

crowded mass, στίφος, στίφους, τό.

crown, στέφανος, ὁ.

cry, cries, κραυγή, ἡ.

Ctesias, Κτησιᾶς, ου.

cure, ἰάομαι, ἰάσομαι, ἰασάμην, ἰάθην.

cut through, δια-κόπτω (κόψω, ἔκοψα, ἐκόφα, ἐκομμαι, ἐκόπην) ; — to pieces, κατα-κόπτω.

Cydnus, Κύδνος, ὁ.

Cyrus, Κύρος, ὁ.

D

Dana, Δάνα, τά.

danger, κίνδυνος, ὁ.

Dardas, Δάρδας, ατος, ὁ.

Darius, Δαρείος, ὁ.

dawn, ἑως, ἕω, ἡ.

day, ἡμέρᾱ, ἡ ; —'s march, σταθ-μός, ὁ.

dead, τεθνηκώς, partic. of θνήσκω, die.

deal (a great), πολὺς, πολλή, πολὺ.

dear, φίλος.

death, θάνατος, ὁ ; put to —, ἀπο-κτείνω (κτενῶ, ἔκτεινα, ἔκτονα, ἔκτανον) ; stone to —. κατα-πε-τρόω (ἐπετρώθην).

deceive, ψεύδω, ψεύσω, ἔψευσα, ἔψευσμαι, ἐψεύσθην.

decide, δοκεῖ and dat.

declare, λέγω, λέξω, ἔλεξα, λέλεγμαι, ἐλέχθην.

deem, νομίζω, νομιῶ, ἐνόμισα, etc.

deep, βαθύς; four —, ἐπὶ τεττάρων.

defeated (be), ἡττάομαι, ἡττήσομαι, etc.

defense, ἔρυμα, ατος, τό; in — of, ὑπέρ and gen.

delay, δια-τρίβω (τρίψω, ἔτριψα, τέτριφα, τέτριμμαι, ἐτρίβην).

delegate, αἰρετός, ό.

deliberate, mid. of βουλεύω, βουλεύσω, etc.

delighted (be), ἡδομαι, ἡσθήσομαι, ἡσθην.

delinquent, ό άδικών, partic. of άδικέω.

demand, αξιώω, αξιώσω, etc.; απαιτέω, αιτήσω, etc.; — additional, προσ-αιτέω.

depart, ἀπ-εἶμι, ἀπ-έρχομαι.

deprive, στερέω, στερήσω, etc.

descend, κατα-βαίνω (βήσομαι, βέβηκα, βέβαιμαι, ἐβάθην, ἔβην).

desert, προ-δίδωμι (δώσω, ἔδωκα and ἔδομεν, ἔδωκα, ἔδομαι, ἐδόθην); αὐτομολέω, αὐτομολήσω, etc.

deserted, ἔρημος.

deserter, αὐτόμολος, ό.

designs (have — against), ἐπι-βουλεύω, ἐπι-βουλεύσω, etc.

desire, ἐθέλω, ἐθελήσω, ἠθέλησα, ἠθέληκα.

destroy, ἀπ-όλλυμι (όλώ, ὤλεσα, ὀλώλεκα, ὀλωλα, ὤλομην).

detachment, τάξις, τάξεως, ἡ.

detected = evident, δηλός.

devoted (be), εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχω.

die, τελευτάω, τελευτήσω, etc.

difficult, χαλεπός.

difficulty, ἀπορίᾱ, ἡ.

discipline, ἐνταξίᾱ, ἡ.

discouraged, ἄθυμος.

disembark, ἀπο-βιβάζω (βιβάζω or βιβῶ, ἐβίβασα).

dishonor, ἀτιμάζω, ἀτιμάσω, etc.

dismount, κατα-βαίνω (βήσομαι, βέβηκα, βέβαιμαι, ἐβάθην, ἔβην).

disorder (in), ἄτακτος.

dispatch, ἐπιστολή, ἡ.

displeased (be), ἄχθομαι, ἀχθέσομαι, ἠχθήσομαι.

dispose, δια-τίθημι (θήσω, ἔθηκα and ἔθεμεν, τέθεικα, τέθειμαι, ἐτέθην).

dispute, ἀμφι-λέγω (λέξω, ἔλεξα, λέλεγμαι, ἐλέχθην); have a bit of a —, ἀμφι-λέγω τι.

distant (be), ἀπ-έχω (ἀφ-έξω and ἀπο-σχήσω, ἔσχηκα, ἔσχημαι, ἔσχον).

disturb, πράγματα παρ-έχω (ἔξω and σχήσω, etc.).

ditch, τάφος, ἡ.

do, ποιέω, ποιήσω, etc.; πράττω, πράξω, ἐπραῖα, πέπραχα and πέπραγα, πέπραγμαι, ἐπράχθην; — harm or ill, κακῶς or κακὰ ποιέω; — wrong, άδικέω, άδικήσω, etc.

Dolopians, Δόλοπες, οί.

down (go), καθ-ήκω, καθ-ήξω.

draw, σπάω, σπάω, ἔσπασα, ἔσπακα, ἔσπασμαι, ἔσπασθην; — near, πλησιάζω, πλησιάσω, etc.; — up, τάττω, τάξω, ἔταξα, τέταχα, τέταγμα, ἐτάχθην and ἐτάγην.

drive, ἐλαύνω, ἐλῶ, ἤλασα, ἐλήλακα, ἐλήλαμαι, ἤλάθην; — out, ἐκ-βάλλω (βαλῶ, βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην, ἔβαλον).

driver, ἡνίοχος, ό.

due (be), pass. of ὀφείλω, ὀφειλήσω, ὀφείλησα and ὀφελον, ὀφειληκα, ὀφειλήθην, owe.

during, expressed by gen. of time.

dust (mass of), κονιορτός, ό.

dwell, οἰκέω, οἰκήσω, etc.

E

each, ἕκαστος; — other, ἀλλήλων.
 eagerness, τὸ προθυμεῖσθαι.
 earlier, πρότερος.
 easily, ῥαδίως.
 easy, ῥάδιος.
 eat, ἐσθίω, ἔδομαι, ἐδήδοκα, ἐδήδε-
 σμαι, ἡδέσθην, ἔφαγον.
 effects (most valuable), τὰ πλείστου
 ἄξια.
 Egyptian, Αἰγύπτιος.
 either, εἴτε, ἢ.
 elapse, παρέρχομαι (ἐλήλυθα, ἡλ-
 θον).
 elder, eldest, πρεσβύτερος, πρεσβύ-
 τατος.
 else, ἄλλος.
 embark, ἐμ-βαίνω (βήσομαι, βέβηκα,
 βέβαιμαι, ἐβάθην, ἔβην).
 employ, χράσμαι, χρήσομαι, ἐχρησά-
 μην, κέχρημαι, ἐχρήσθην.
 empty, εἰσ-βάλλω (βαλῶ, βέβληκα,
 βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην, ἔβαλον).
 encamp, στρατοπεδεύω, ἐστρατοπε-
 δευσάμην, ἐστρατοπέδευμαι.
 endure, ἀν-έχομαι (ἀνα-σχέσομαι,
 ἐσχῆμαι, ἐσχόμην).
 enemy, ἐχθρός; the —, οἱ πολέμιοι.
 enjoy, χράσμαι, χρήσομαι, ἐχρησά-
 μην, κέχρημαι, ἐχρήσθην.
 enraged (be), ὀργίζομαι, ὀργιοῦμαι,
 ὠργισμαι, ὠργίσθην.
 enter, εἰσ-έρχομαι (ἐλήλυθα, ἡλθον).
 entire, πᾶς, ἅπας, σύμπας.
 enumeration, ἀριθμός.
 envied, ζηλωτός.
 Erythraean, Ἐρυθραῖος.
 Erythraean, Ἐρυθραῖα, ἡς.
 escape, ἀπο-φεύγω (φεύξομαι or φευ-
 ξοῦμαι, πέφευγα, ἔφυγον); — by
 stealth, ἀπο-διδράσκω (δράσσομαι,
 ἔδραυν, δέδρακα); narrowly —, ὀλί-
 γου δειν.

escort, οἱ ἀμφί τινα.
 Euphrates, Εὐφράτης, ου.
 even, καί; not —, οὐδέ (μηδέ); with
 — step, ἐν ἴσῳ.
 evening, δειλὴ, ἡ.
 ever, ποτέ; = always, ἀεί.
 everybody, πάντες.
 everything, πάντα.
 evident, δῆλος; evidently, δῆλός
 with supplementary partic.
 example, μέρος, μέρους, τό.
 execution, θάνατος, ὁ.
 exercise, γυμνάζω, γυμνάσω, etc.
 exile, φυγᾶς, φυγάδος, ὁ.
 expectations, γνώμη, ἡ.
 expedition, στόλος, ὁ; make an —,
 στρατεύομαι, στρατεύσομαι, etc.
 expose, ἐπι-δείκνυμι (δείξω, ἔδειξα,
 δέδειχα, δέδειγμαι, ἐδείχθην).
 express, ἀπο-φαίνω (φανῶ, ἔφηνα,
 πέφηνα and πέφαγκα, πέφασμαι,
 ἐφάνθην and ἐφάνην).
 extend, παρα-τίνω (τενῶ, ἔτεινα,
 τέταχα, τέταμαι, ἐτάθην).
 extent, πλήθος, πλήθους, τό.
 extricate, ἐκ-κομίζω (κομιῶ, ἐκόμισα,
 etc.).

F

faithful, πιστός.
 fall (in battle), ἀπο-θνήσκω (θανοῦ-
 μαι, τέθνηκα, ἔθανον); — behind,
 pass. of ὑπο-λείπω (λείψω, λείλοιπα,
 λείλειμαι, ἐλείφθην, ἔλιπον); — ill,
 ἀσθενέω, ἀσθενήσω, etc.; — in
 with, ἐν-τυγχάνω (τεύξομαι, τετύ-
 χηκα, ἔτυχον); — upon, ἐπι-πίπτω
 (πεσοῦμαι, πέπτωκα, ἔπεσον); —
 to quarreling, impf. of ἀμφι-λέγω τι.
 false (prove), mid. of ψεύδω, ψεύσω,
 ἔψευσα, ἔψευσμαι, ἐψεύσθην.
 falsely (accuse), δια-βάλλω (βαλῶ,
 βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην, ἔβα-
 λον).

- far, πόρρω.
 fast, ταχέως (θάπτον, τάχιστα).
 favor, ὑπ-άρχω (ἄρξω, ἡρξα, ἡργμαι, ἡρχθην).
 favorable, καλός.
 fear, φόβος; in — = fearing; verb, φοβέομαι, φοβήσομαι, etc.; δέδοικα, ἔδεια, δέδια.
 fellow-, ἄνδρες (στρατιῶται).
 few, but few, ὀλίγοι.
 fidelity, πιστότης, ότης, ή.
 field (take the), στρατεύομαι, στρατεύσομαι, etc.
 fifteen hundred, πεντακόσιοι καὶ χίλιοι.
 fight, πολεμέω, πολεμήσω, etc.; μάχομαι, μαχοῦμαι, ἐμαχεσάμην, ἐμάχημαι.
 fill, ἐμπλημι, πλήσω, ἐπλησα, ἐπλήκα, ἐπλή(σ)μαι, ἐπλήσθην.
 finally, τέλος.
 find, τυγχάνω (or with dat., ἐν-τυγχάνω), τεύξομαι, τετύχηκα, ἔτυχον, with gen.; — out, αἰσθάνομαι, αἰσθήσομαι, ᾗσθημαι, ᾗσθόμην; γινώσκω, γνώσομαι, ἔγνωκα, ἔγνωσμαι, ἐγνώσθην, ἔγνω.
 fine, ἀγαθός, καλός; — fellow, καλός τε καὶ ἀγαθός.
 first, πρῶτος; as adv. first, at first, first of all, πρῶτον.
 fish, ἰχθύς, ἰχθύος, ό.
 fitting (most), ἀριστος.
 five, πέντε; five hundred, πεντακόσιοι.
 flank-movement, κύκλωσις, εως, ή.
 flay, ἐκ-δέρω (δερῶ, ἔδαιρα, δέδαρμαι, ἔδάρην).
 flee, φεύγω, φεύξομαι or φευξοῦμαι, πέφευγα, ἔφυγον.
 flesh, κρέα, τά.
 flight, φυγή, ή.
 flow, ῥέω, ῥεύσομαι or ῥυήσομαι, ἔρρευσα, ἔρρύηκα, ἔρρύν.
 fly, πέτομαι, πτήσομαι, ἐπτόμην; = flee, φεύγω.
 fodder, χόρτος, ό.
 foe, πολέμιοι, οί.
 follow, ἔπομαι, ἔψομαι, ἐσπόμην, with dat.
 following, ὕστεραιος; on the — day, τῇ ὕστεραίᾳ; in the — manner, τόνδε τὸν τρόπον; as follows, τάδε.
 folly, εὐήθεια, ή.
 food, σίτος, ό.
 foolish = folly, εὐήθεια.
 foot, πούς, ποδός, ό; foot-, infantry, πεζός.
 for, conj., γάρ, postpositive; prep., eis and acc.; ἐνεκα and gen.
 forage, ἐπι-σιτίζομαι (σιτιοῦμαι, ἐσιτισάμην).
 force, βιάζομαι, βιάσομαι, etc.; δύναμις, εως, ή.
 ford, διάβασις, εως, ή.
 fordable, διαβατός.
 form, mid. and pass. of τάττω, τάξω, ἔταξα, τέταχα, τέταγμα, ἐτάχθην and ἐτάγην.
 former, ἀρχαίος; πρόσθεν (in attributive position).
 formerly, τὸ ἀρχαίον; πρόσθεν.
 formidable, φοβερός.
 fortified, ἐρμνός.
 forward (move), — march, πρό-εμι.
 fountain, κρήνη, ή.
 four, τέτταρες; — deep, ἐπὶ τεττάρων; — thousand, τετρακισχίλιοι.
 freedom, ἐλευθερίᾳ, ή.
 frequently, πολλάκις.
 friend, φίλος, ό.
 friendly, εὐνοϊκώς.
 friendship, φιλιᾶ.
 frighten, φοβέω, φοβήσω, etc.; ἐκπλήττω (πλήξω, ἐπληξα, ἐπληγα, ἐπληγμαι, ἐπλήγην, but ἐξ-επλήγην); be thoroughly frightened, pass. of ἐκ-πλήττω.

from, ἀπό or ἐξ, with gen.
front (in — of), πρό with gen.
fugitive, φυγᾶς, φυγάδος, ὁ, ἡ.
fulfill, ἀπο-δίδωμι (δώσω, ἔδωκα and
ἔδομεν, δέδωκα, δέδομαι, ἐδόθην).
full (in), ἐντελής; put on — armor,
ἐξ-οπλίζομαι; in — array, ἐν τῇ
ἐξοπλισίᾳ; — market, ἀγορά πλή-
θουσα; — of, πλήρης, μεστός and
gen.; at — speed, ἀνὰ κράτος.
funds, χρήματα, τά.

G

gain (a victory), κρατέω, κρατήσω,
etc.; to —, etc., περὶ νίκης.
games, ἀγών, ἀγώνος, ὁ.
garrison, φυλακή.
gates, θύραι.
gather, ἀθροίζω, ἀθροίσω, etc.
Gaulites, Γαυλίτης, ὁ.
gazelle, δορκάς, δορκάδος, ἡ.
general, στρατηγός, ὁ; in —, τὸ
σύμπαν.
gentleman, ἀνὴρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ.
get, λαμβάνω, λήψομαι, ἐληφα, ἐλ-
λημαι, ἐλήφθην, ἔλαβον; — out,
ἐκ-κομίζω (κομίσω and κομιῶ, etc.);
— out of the way, ἐκ τοῦ μέσου
ἐξ-ίσταμαι (στήσομαι, etc.); get =
be, become, γίγνομαι, γενήσομαι,
γεγένημαι, γέγονα, ἐγενόμην; —
the better of, περι-γίγνομαι; — to,
δια-τελέω (τελῶ, ἐτέλεσα, τετέλεκα,
τετέλεσμαι, ἐτελέσθην); — to-
gether, συν-άγω, ἄξω, etc.; — rid
of, ἐκ-βάλλω (βαλῶ, βέβληκα, βέ-
βλημαι, ἐβλήθην, ἔβαλον).
gift, δῶρον, τό.
girdle, ζώνη, ἡ.
give, δίδωμι, δώσω, ἔδωκα and ἔδομεν,
δέδωκα, δέδομαι, ἐδόθην; — orders,
παρ-αγγέλλω (ἀγγελῶ, ἡγγεῖλα,
ἡγγεῖλα, ἡγγεῖμαι, ἡγγέλθην); —

up the idea, ἀπο-γινώσκω (γνώ-
σομαι, ἔγνωκα, ἔγνωσμαι, ἐγνώσθην,
ἔγνω) and gen.; — out, παρ-
αγγέλλω.

glad to hear = hear gladly.

gladly, ἡδέως.

Glus, Γλοῦς, ὁ.

go, ἔρχομαι, ἐλήλυθα, ἦλθον; εἰμι;
— about, δι-έρχομαι; — away,
ἀπ-έρχομαι; — by, παρ-έρχομαι;
— down, κατα-βαίνω (βήσομαι, βέ-
βηκα, βέβαιμαι, ἐβάθην, ἔβην); —
down to, καθ-ήκω (ἦξω); — for-
ward, εἰμι τοῦ πρόσω; — in,
εἰς-εἰμι; — inland with, συν-
ανα-βαίνω; — off, ἀπ-εἰμι, ἀπ-
έρχομαι; — on, γίγνομαι (γενή-
σομαι, γεγένημαι, γέγονα, ἐγενόμην);
— out, ἐξ-έρχομαι; — over, ἀφ-
ίστημι (ἀπο-στήσω, ἔστησα and
ἔστην, ἔστηκα, ἔσταμαι, ἐστάθην);
— with, συμ-πορεύομαι (πορεύσο-
μαι, ἐπορεύθην).

Gobryas, Γωβρύᾱς, ου or ᾱ, ὁ.

god, θεός, ὁ.

gold (of), golden, χρῦσοῦς, ἡ, οὖν.

good, ἀγαθός; receive —, εὖ πάσχω.

good cheer (be of), θαρρέω.

grain, σῖτος, ὁ; (boats), σῖταγωγᾶ.

grateful (be), χάριν οἶδα.

great, μέγας; — king, βασιλεὺς;

— deal, πολὺς.

greatly, ἰσχυρῶς.

Greece, Ἑλλάς, Ἑλλάδος, ἡ.

Greek, Ἑλλην, Ἑλληνος, ὁ; adj.,
Ἑλληνικός.

grieved (be), ἄχθομαι, ἀχθέσομαι,
ἡχθέσθην.

guard, keep —, be on —, φυλάττω,
φυλάξω, ἐφύλαξα, πεφύλαχα, πεφύ-
λαγαί, ἐφυλάχθην; guard, φύλαξ,
φύλακος, ὁ.

guest-friend, ξένος, ὁ.

guide, ἡγεμών, μόνος, ὁ.

H

half, ἥμισυς, εἰα, υ; as noun, τὸ ἥμισυ.

halt, ἐφ-ιστημι (στήσω, ἕστησα and ἕστην, ἕστηκα, ἕσταμαι, ἑστάθην).

hand, χεῖρ, χειρός, ἡ; be at —, πάρ-ειμι (ἔσομαι).

handsome, καλός.

hang up, κρεμάννυμι, κρεμῶ, ἐκρέμασα, ἐκρεμάσθην.

happen, τυγχάνω, τεύξομαι, τετύχηκα, ἔτυχον; — on, ἐν-τυγχάνω.

happy, εὐδαίμων.

hard, χαλεπός; be — pressed, passive of πιέζω, πῖεσω, ἐπῖεσα, ἐπῖεσθην.

harm, κακόν; ἀδικέω, ἀδικήσω, etc.; do — to, ἀδικέω, κακῶς ποιέω; come to —, πάσχω τι.

haste (in), σὺν σπουδῇ.

hasten, σπεύδω, σπεύσω, ἔσπευσα.

have, ἔχω, ἔξω and σχήσω, ἔσχηκα, ἔσχημαι, ἔσχον; — one's pay, φέρω; — confidence, πιστεύω, πιστεύσω, etc.; — designs against, ἐπι-βουλεύω (βουλεύσω, etc.), with dat.; — regard, ἐπι-μελέομαι and gen.

hay, χόρτος κούφος.

he, οὗτος, ὁ δέ.

head, κεφαλῇ, ἡ.

hear, hear of, ἀκούω, ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα, ἀκήκοα, ἠκούσθην.

hearing (in the), partic. of ἀκούων.

heavily, ἰσχυρῶς.

heights, τὰ ἄκρα.

helmet, κράνος, κράνους, τό.

help, ὠφελέω, ὠφελήσω, etc.; — get out, συν-εκ-κομίζω (κοιῶ, etc.); with the — of, σὺν and dat.

her, αὐτῆς.

here, αὐτοῦ.

hesitate, ὀκνέω, ὀκνήσω, ὤκνησα.

hide, διφθέρα, ἡ.

high, ὑψηλός; (hopes), καλός.

hill, λόφος, ὁ.

him, αὐτόν; himself, reflexive, ἑαυτοῦ, αὐτοῦ; intensive, αὐτός.

hinder, κωλύω, κωλύσω, etc.

hired (he), pass. of μισθῶ, μισθώσω.

his, αὐτοῦ, but more commonly expressed by the article.

hit (with an arrow), τοξεύω, τοξεύσω, etc.

hoard, κατα-τίθημι (θήσω, ἔθηκα and ἔθεμεν, τέθεικα, τέθειμαι, ἐτέθην).

hold, ἔχω, ἔξω and σχήσω, ἔσχηκα, ἔσχημαι, ἔσχον; — (a review), mid. of ποιέω, ποιήσω, etc.

home (at), οἶκοι; home, homeward, οἶκαδε.

honest, δίκαιος.

honor, τιμή, ἡ; τιμάω, τιμήσω, etc.

hope = wish, ἐθέλω, ἐθελήσω, ἠθέλησα, ἠθέληκα; hoping to (come), ὥς and fut. partic.; noun, ἐλπίς, ἐλπίδος, ἡ.

hopefully (talk), ἐλπίδας λέγω.

hoplite, ὀπλίτης, ου.

horse, ἵππος, ὁ; adj., ἵππικός; on horseback, ἐφ' ἵππων; horseman, ἵππεύς, ἵππέως, ὁ; — tracks, ἵχνη (τὰ) ἵππων.

hostile, πολέμιος.

how, πῶς, ὅπως; — many, πόσοι.

however, οὖν, μέντοι.

hundred, ἑκατόν.

hunger, λιμός, ὁ.

hunt, θηρεύω, θηρεύσω, etc.; θηράω, θηράσω, etc.

hurl, ἵημι, ἤσω, ἤκα and εἵμεν, εἵκα, εἵμαι, εἴθην; βάλλω, βαλῶ, βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην, ἔβαλον.

hurry, be in a —, σπεύδω, σπεύσω, ἔσπευσα.

husband, ἀνὴρ, ἀνδρός.

I

I, ἐγώ, ἐμοῦ (μοῦ), ἐμοί (μοί), ἐμέ (μέ).

Iconium, Ἰκόνιον, τό.

idea (give up the), ἀπο-γινώσκω.

if, εἰ with indicative or optative; εἰάν with subjunctive.

ill (do), κακῶς or κακὰ ποιέω; fall —, be —, ἀσθενέω, ἀσθενήσω.

imitate, μιμέομαι, μιμήσομαι, etc.

immediately, εὐθύς.

in, ἐν with dat.; after verbs of motion, εἰς and acc.; be — a bad way, κακῶς ἔχω; — behalf of, ὑπέρ and gen.; — defense of, ὑπέρ; — disorder, ἄτακτος; — full, ἐντελής; — haste, σὺν σπουδῇ; — order (to), ἵνα, ὅπως, ὥς; — power of, ἐπὶ and dat.; — reality, τῷ ὄντι; — regard to, πρὸς and acc.; — the rear, ὀπισθεν; — return, ἀντί and gen.; — wait (lie), ἐνεδρεύω, ἐνεδρεύομαι, etc.

indeed, δῆ.

infantry, ὀπλίται, οἱ.

inflict, ἐπι-τίθῃμι (θήσω, ἔθηκα and ἔθεμεν, τέθεικα, τέθειμαι, ἐτέθη).

inhabitants, οἱ ἐν-οικοῦντες.

inhabited, οἰκούμενος.

injure, ἀδικέω, ἀδικήσω, etc.

inland, ἄνω.

inspect, κατα-σκέπτομαι (σκέψομαι, ἐσκεψάμην, ἐσκεμμαι).

inspire, ποιέω, ποιήσω, etc.

instead of, ἀντί and gen.

institute, τίθῃμι, θήσω, ἔθηκα and ἔθεμεν, τέθεικα, τέθειμαι, ἐτέθη.

intend, μέλλω, μέλλῃσω, ἐμέλλῃσα.

intense, πολύς.

intention (with the — of), ὥς and fut. partic.

interpreter, ἐρμηνεύς, ἔως, ὁ.

into, εἰς and acc.

invade, εἰς-βάλλω (βαλῶ, βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην, ἐβαλον).

Ionian, Ἴων(α, ἡ).

Ionian, Ἰωνικός.

Issus, Ἴσσοί, οἱ.

itself, reflexive, ἑαυτοῦ, αὐτοῦ; intensive, αὐτό.

J

javelin, παλτόν, τό.

jealous, aor. partic. of φιλοτιμέομαι, φιλοτιμήσομαι, etc.

join = unite, ζεύγνυμι, ζεύξω, ἔζευξα, ἔζευγμαι, ἐζεύχθην, and ἐζύγην; = go with, συμ-πορεύομαι (πορεύσομαι, etc.); (battle), συν-άπτω (ἄψω, ἡψα, ἡμμαι, ἡφθην).

journey, ὁδός, οὗ, ἡ; πορεύομαι, πορεύομαι, etc.

judge, νομίζω, νομιῶ, ἐνόμισα, etc.

jump, εἰς-πηδάω (πηδήσω, etc.).

just, δῆ.

K

keep = prevent, κωλύω, κωλύσω, etc.; — guard, φυλάττω; — secret, κρύπτω; — doing something, expressed by the impf.

kill, ἀπο-κτείνω (κτενῶ, ἔκτεινα, ἔκτονα, ἔκτανον).

kinds (of all), παντοῖος; παντοδαπός.

king, βασιλεύς, βασιλέως, ὁ; be or become —, βασιλεύω, βασιλεύσω.

know, οἶδα; γινώσκω, γνῶσομαι, ἔγνωκα, ἔγνωσμαι, ἐγνώσθην, ἐγνων; you —, δῆ; — how, ἐπίσταμαι, ἐπιστήσομαι, ἡπιστήθην.

knowledge (from) = knowing; act without the —, λανθάνω, λήσω, ἔλησα, λέληθα, λέλησμαι, ἔλαθον.

known, δῆλος.

L

Lacedaemonian, Λακεδαιμόνιος.

lack, ἀπορέω, ἀπορήσω, etc.

lad, παῖς, παιδός, ὁ.

lady, γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ.

land, χώρᾱ, ἡ; by —, κατὰ γῆν.

large, μέγας; πολύς.

last (at), ἥδην.

late (be too), ὑστερέω, ὑστέρησα, ὑστέρηκα; later, ὕστερον.

latter, οὗτος.

laughter, γέλως, γέλωτος, ὁ.

lay waste, ἐκ-κόπτω (κόψω, ἔκοψα, κέκοφα, κέκομαι, ἐκόπην).

lazily, σχολαίως.

lead, ἄγω, ἄξω, ἦξα, ἦχα, ἦγμαι, ἦχθην, ἦγαγον; ἄρχω, ἄρξω, ἥρξα, ἥρμαι, ἥρχθην; — off, ἐξ-άγω.

leader, ἄρχων, ἄρχοντος, ὁ; ἡγεμών, ἡμεμόνος, ὁ.

leap, εἰς-πηδάω (πηδήσω, etc.); — down, κατα-πηδάω.

learn, αἰσθάνομαι; ἀκούω; γιγνώσκω; μανθάνω.

leave, λείπω, λείψω, λέλοιπα, λείλειμαι, ἐλείφθην, ἔλιπον; — behind, κατα-λείπω.

left, εὐώνυμος; — wing, τὸ εὐώνυμον (κέρας).

leisure, σχολή, ἡ.

leisurely, σχολαίως.

length, μήκος, μήκους, τό.

let, sign of imperative mood.

letter, ἐπιστολή, ἡ.

level, ὁμαλός.

levy, συλλογή, ἡ.

lie in ambush, — in wait, ἐνεδρεύω, ἐνεδρεύομαι, ἐνήδρευσα, ἐνήδρευθην.

life (at home), τὰ οἴκοι; — with me, τὰ παρ' ἐμοί.

light (make), πράως λέγω (λέξω, ἔλεξα, λέλεγμαι, ἐλέχθην).

light-armed (soldier), γυμνός, ἦτος or γυμνήτης, ου, ὁ.

lightly, πράως.

like, παραπλήσιος; ὥσπερ; = wish, ἐθέλω; = love, φιλέω, φιλήσω, etc.

likely (he), μέλλω, μελλήσω, ἐμέλλησα.

line, τάξις, τάξεως, ἡ; φάλαγξ, φάλαγγος, ἡ.

listen, ἀκούω, ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα, ἀκήκοα, ἠκούσθην.

little, μικρός; a —, but a —, ὀλίγω.

live, οἰκέω, οἰκήσω, etc.; ζάω, ζήσω; living, ζών.

long, μακρός, πολύς; adv., πολύ; no longer, οὐκέτι.

look (upon) = see; — out for, ἐπιμελέομαι (μελήσομαι, etc.).

loss, ὄλεθρος, ὁ.

loud, μέγας.

love, φιλέω, φιλήσω, etc.

lovely, καλός.

Lycaea, τὰ Λύκαια.

Lydia, Λυδία, ἡ.

M

Maeander, Μαίανδρος, ὁ.

maintain, τρέφω, θρέψω, ἔθρεψα, τέτροφα, τέθραμμαι, ἐτρέφθην and ἐτράφην.

make, ποιέω, ποιήσω, etc.; — counter-preparations, ἀντι-παρα-σκευάζομαι (σκευάσομαι, etc.); — an expedition, στρατεύομαι; — light of, πράως λέγω; — march, πορεύομαι and cognate acc.; — a march with, συμ-πορεύομαι; — off with, ἀρπάζω, ἀρπάσω, etc.; — promises, ὑπ-ισχνέομαι, ὑπο-σχίσομαι, ὑπ-έσχημαι, ὑπ-εσχόμην; — terms, κατα-λύω (λύσω, etc.); συν-αλλάττω (ἀλλάξω, ἡλλαξα, ἡλλαχα,

- ἡλλαγμαί, ἡλλάχθην and ἡλλά-
γην); — war, πολεμέω, πολεμήσω,
etc.; — way, ὑπο-χωρέω (χωρήσω,
etc.); made of = joined.
- man, ἀνὴρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ; ἄνθρωπος, ὁ.
- manner (in the following), ὥς;
τόνδε τὸν τρόπον.
- many, πολλοί; so —, τοσοῦτοι; —
times, πολλάκις.
- march, σταθμός, ὁ; πορεύομαι, πο-
ρεύσομαι, etc.; — on, ἐξ-ελαύνω
(ἐλῶ, ἤλασα, ἐλήλακα, ἐλήλαμαι,
ἤλαθην); — past, παρ-ελαύνω.
- market, ἀγορά, ἡ; — men, οἱ ἐν τῇ
ἀγορᾷ, οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς.
- marshal, δια-τάττω (τάξω, ἔταξα,
τέταχα, τέταγμαί, ἐτάχθην).
- Marsyas, Μαρσύας, οὐ.
- Mascas, Μάσκας, ᾱ (Doric gen.), ὁ.
- mass (crowded), στίφος, στίφους,
τό; — of dust, κονιορτός, ὁ.
- master of, ἐγκρατής.
- matter, πρᾶγμα, πρᾶγματος, τό.
- may, sign of optative of wish.
- meal, ἄλφιτα, τά.
- means of (by), expressed by dat.
- meanwhile, ἐν τούτῳ.
- meat, plur. of κρέας, κρέως, τό.
- Media, Μηδία, ἡ.
- meet (to), ἀντίος; — one, πάρειμι
and dat.
- Megaphernes, Μεγαφέρνης, οὐ.
- men, ἄνθρωποι, ἄνδρες; the — in,
οἱ ἐν . . .
- Menon, Μένων, Μένωνος, ὁ.
- mention, εἶπον, ἐρώ, εἶπα, εἶρηκα,
εἶρημαι, ἐρρήθην.
- mercenary, ξένος, ὁ.
- merchantman, ὀλκάς, ὀλκάδος, ἡ.
- message (bring a), ἀγγέλλω τι.
- messenger, ἄγγελος, ὁ.
- Midas, Μίδας, οὐ.
- middle of, μέσος.
- midnight, μέσαι νύκτες, αἱ.
- midst, μέσον, τό.
- might (with all one's), κατὰ κράτος.
- Miletus, Μίλητος, οὐ, ἡ.
- millet, μελίνη, ἡ.
- millstone, ὄνος ἀλέτης, οὐ.
- mina, μνᾶ, μνᾶς, ἡ.
- miracle, θεῖον, τό.
- misfortune, πάθος, πάθους, τό.
- miss, ἁμαρτάνω, ἁμαρτήσομαι, ἡμάρ-
τηκα, ἡμάρτημαι, ἡμαρτήθην, ἡμαρ-
τον, with gen.
- mistaken (be), pass. of ψεύδω, ψεύσω,
ἔψευσα, ἔψευσμαι, ἐψεύσθην.
- mix, κεράννυμι, ἐκέρασα, κέκραμαι,
ἐκεράσθην and ἐκράθην.
- money, ἀργύριον or χρῦσῖον, τό;
χρήματα, τά; spend —, δαπανάω,
δαπανήσω, etc.
- month, μῆν, μηνός, ὁ.
- more, πλείων; adv., πλέον; μᾶλλον;
= else, ἄλλος.
- moreover, οὖν; μέντοι.
- morning, ἔως, ἔω, ἡ.
- most, expressed by superlative;
πλείστος; — of, οἱ πολλοί, οἱ
πλείστοι.
- mother, μήτηρ, μητρός, ἡ.
- mount, ἀνα-βαίνω (βήσομαι, βέβηκα,
βέβημαι, ἐβάθην, ἔβην).
- mountain, ὄρος, ὄρους, τό.
- move (back to quarters), κατὰ χώ-
ραν τίθημι τὰ ὅπλα; — forward,
πρό-εimi.
- mud, πηλός, ὁ.
- musical skill, σοφία, ἡ.
- must, expressed by δεῖ and infin., or
by verbal adj. in τέος.
- muster, ἀθροίζω, ἀθροίσω, etc.
- my, ἐμός.
- myriad, μυριάς, μυριάδος, ἡ.
- Myriandus, Μυριάνδος, οὐ, ἡ.
- myself, reflexive, ἐμαυτοῦ; intensive,
αὐτός.
- Mysian, Μῦσός, ὁ.

N

name, ὄνομα, ὀνόματος, τό.
 narrow, στενός; — place, στενοχωρίᾱ, ἦ.
 narrowly (escape), ὀλίγου δεῖ.
 nation, ἔθνος, ἔθνους, τό; — by —, κατὰ ἔθνη.
 native land, πατρίς, πατρίδος, ἦ.
 naturally, δῆ.
 naval, ναυτικός.
 near, παρά and dat.; ἐγγύς and gen.; draw —, πλησιάζω.
 nearness, τὸ ἐγγὺς γίνεσθαι.
 necessary (be), δεῖ, χρή.
 necklace, στρεπτός, ὁ.
 need = be necessary, δεῖ.
 neglect, ἀμελέω, ἀμελήσω, etc.
 neither, οὔτε (μήτε).
 never, οὔποτε (μήποτε).
 next to, ἐχόμενος, with gen.
 night, νύξ, νυκτός, ἦ.
 no = not, οὐ (μή); nobody, no one, οὐδεὶς (μηδεὶς); — longer, οὐκέτι (μηκέτι).
 noble, ἀγαθός.
 nobleman, δυνάστης, ου.
 noise, θόρυβος, ὁ; without —, ἡσυχῇ.
 nonsense, φλυαρίᾱ, ἦ.
 nor, οὐδέ (μηδέ); neither . . . nor, οὔτε (μήτε) . . . οὔτε (μήτε).
 not, οὐ (οὐκ, οὐχ), μή; — a man, οὐδεὶς (μηδεὶς).
 nothing, οὐδέν (μηδέν).
 now, of time, νῦν; intensive, δῆ.
 number, numbering, ἀριθμός, ὁ.

O

O that, expression of wish, εἴθε, εἰ γάρ.
 obedient, πειθόμενος.
 obey, mid. of πείθω, πείσω, ἔπεισα, πέπεικα, πέπεισμαι, ἐπείσθην.
 object, ἀντι-λέγω (λέξω, ἔλεξα, λέλεγμαι, ἐλέχθην).

object (of envy), ζηλωτός.
 obliged (be), δεῖ and infin.
 occasion (on one), δῆ ποτε.
 occurrence, πρᾶγμα, πράγματος, τό.
 of, sign of gen.; — course, δῆ.
 off (be), ἀπ-εἰμι; = be distant, ἀπέχω (ἔξω and σχήσω, ἔσχηκα, ἔσχημαι, ἔσχον); beg —. ἐξαιτέομαι (αἰτήσομαι, etc.); make — with, ἀρπάζω; sail —, ἀποπλέω (πλεύσομαι and πλευσοῦμαι, ἔπλευσα, πέπλευκα, πέπλευσμαι).
 officer, ἄρχων, ἄρχοντας, ὁ.
 often, πολλάκις.
 older, πρεσβύτερος.
 Olynthian, Ὀλύνθιος.
 omens, ἱερά, τά.
 on, ἐν or ἐπί with dat.; ἐπί with gen.; εἰς and acc.; = in regard to, ἀμφί; — account of, ἐνεκα and gen.; — both sides, ἐκατέρωθεν; — horseback, ἐφ' ἵππων; — board, εἰς and acc.; sometimes expressed by simple dat.
 once, ποτέ; at —, εὐθύς.
 one, εἰς; indefinite pronoun, τις; — in particular, εἰς δὲ δῆ; — another, ἀλλήλων; the —, the other, ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ; — hundred, ἑκατόν.
 only, μόνος; adv., μόνον; — a few, ὀλίγοι.
 openly, ἐν τῷ φανερό.
 open ranks, mid. of δι-ίστημι (στήσω, ἔστησα and ἔστην, ἔστηκα, ἔσταμαι, ἐστάθην).
 opinion, γνώμη, ἦ.
 opponent, ἀντιστασιώτης, ου.
 or, or else, ἢ.
 order, give orders, κελεύω, κελεύσω, ἐκέλευσα, κεκέλευκα, κεκέλευσμαι, ἐκέλεύσθην; παρ-αγγέλλω (ἀγγελῶ, ἡγγεῖλα, ἡγγελκα, ἡγγεῖμαι, ἡγγέλθην).

Orontas, Ὀρόντας, ᾱ or ου.
ostrich, στρουθὸς μέγας or μεγάλη,
ὁ, ἡ.
other, ἄλλος; some . . . others, οἱ
μὲν . . . οἱ δέ.
ought, χρή and infin.
our, ἡμέτερος.
out (start), ὀρμάομαι, ὀρμήσομαι,
etc.; — of the way, ἐκποδών.
outside, ἔξω, with gen.
over, διὰ, with gen.; — by, παρά and
acc.; go —, ἀφ-ίστημι (στήσω,
ἔστησα and ἔστην, ἔστηκα, ἔστα-
μαι, ἐστάθην); rule —, ἄρχω.
overpower, βιάζομαι, βιάσομαι, etc.
overtake, κατα-λαμβάνω (λήψομαι,
εἴληφα, εἴλημαι, ἐλήφθην, ἔλα-
βον).
own (one's) = of one's self, ἑαυτοῦ,
ἑμαυτοῦ, etc.

P

pack-animal, ὑποζύγιον, τό.
paean (sing), παιᾶνίζω, ἐπαιᾶνισα.
palace, βασιλεια, τά.
panic, φόβος, ὁ; panic-stricken (be),
pass. of ἐκ-πλήττω (πλήξω, ἐπληξα,
πέπληγα, πέπληγμαι, -επλάγην).
Paphlagonian, Παφλαγών, ὄνος, ὁ.
parasang, παρασάγγης, ου.
park, παράδεισος, ὁ.
part, μέρος, μέρους, τό.
particular (one in), εἰς δὲ δῆ.
partridge, πέρδιξ, πέρδικος, ὁ, ἡ.
Parysatis, Παρύσατις, ιδος, ἡ.
Pasion, Πᾶσιων, ωνος, ὁ.
pass, εἰσβολή, ἡ; ἐμ-βάλλω (βαλῶ,
βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην, ἔβα-
λον); — along or by, παρ-έρχομαι
(ἐλήλυθα, ἤλθον); — within, γίγ-
νομαι εἴσω.
past (be), παρ-έρχομαι (ἐλήλυθα,
ἤλθον); march —, παρ-ελαύνω
(ἐλῶ, ἤλασα, ἐλήλακα, ἐλήλαμαι,
ἤλάθην).
path, πάροδος, ου, ἡ.
pay, μισθός, ὁ; ἀπο-δίδωμι (δῶσω,
ἔδωκα and ἔδομεν, δέδωκα, δέδομαι,
ἔδόθην); — attention, προσ-έχω
τὸν νοῦν.
paymaster, μισθοδότης, ου.
Peloponnesian, Πελοποννήσιος.
Peloponnesus, Πελοπόννησος, ἡ.
Peltae, Πέλται, ὦν.
peltast, πελταστής, οὔ; adj., πελ-
ταστικός.
people, ἄνθρωποι.
perceive, αἰσθάνομαι, αἰσθήσομαι,
ᾗσθημαι, ᾗσθόμην.
perfectly, παντάπασιν(ν).
perish, mid. and 2 perf. of ἀπ-όλλυμι
(ὀλῶ, ὤλεσα, ὀλώλεκα and ὤλωλα,
ὠλόμην).
permit, ἐπι-τρέπω (τρέψω, ἔτρεψα and
ἔτραπον, τέτροφα and τέτραφα, τέ-
τραμμαι, ἐτρέφθην and ἐτρέπην).
perplexed (be), ἀπορέω, ἀπορήσω,
etc.
Persian, Πέρσης, ου; in —, βαρβα-
ρικῶς.
person (in), αὐτός.
personal enemy, ἐχθρός, ὁ.
persuade, πείθω, πείσω, ἔπεισα, πέ-
πεια, πέπεισμαι, ἐπείσθην.
phalanx, φάλαγξ, φάλαγγος, ἡ.
Phoenicia, Φοινίκη, ἡ.
Phoenician, Φοινίξ, ικος, ὁ.
Phrygia, Φρυγία, ἡ.
Pigres, Πίγρης, ητος, ὁ.
pin-money (for), εἰς ζωνήν.
Pisidians, Πισίδαι, ὦν.
place, χώρᾱ; take one's —, mid. of
καθ-ίστημι (στήσω, ἔστησα and
ἔστην, ἔσθηκα, ἔσταμαι, ἐστάθην);
in the first —, πρῶτον μὲν.
plain, πεδῖον, τό; in — sight or
view, καταφανής.

- plan, βουλεύω, βουλεύσω, etc.;
 plans, τὰ δόξαντα.
 platoon, τάξις, τάξεις, ἡ.
 please, χαρίζομαι, χαριῶμαι, etc.;
 be pleased, ἡδομαι, ἡσθήσομαι,
 ἡσθην.
 pledge, πίστις, πίστεως, ἡ.
 plenty of, ἰκανός.
 plethrum, πλεθρον, τό.
 plot, ἐπιβουλὴ, ἡ; mid. of βουλεύω,
 βουλεύσω, etc.; — against, ἐπι-
 βουλεύω, with dat.
 plunder, ἀρπάζω, ἀρπάσω, ἤρπασα,
 etc.
 pontoon-bridge, γέφυρα, ἡ.
 position, χώρᾱ, ἡ; take —, mid. of
 καθ-ίστημι (στήσω, ἕστησα and
 ἕστην, ἕστηκα, ἕσταμαι, ἕστάθην).
 possessions, χρήματα, τά.
 possible, δυνατόν; οἷόν τε; as . . .
 as —, ὅτι or ὥς and superlative, as
 ὥς τάχιστα, as quickly as —.
 post, καθ-ίστημι (κατα-στήσω,
 ἕστησα and ἕστην, ἕστηκα, ἕστα-
 май, ἕστάθην).
 power, δύναμις, εὐς, ἡ; in the — of,
 ἐπὶ and dat.
 praise, ἐπ-αινέω (αἰνέσω, ἤνεσα,
 ἤνεκα, ἤνημαι, ἤνέθην).
 prefer, mid. of αἰρέω, αἰρήσω, ἤρηκα,
 ἤρημαι, ἤρέθην, εἰλον.
 preparation, παρασκευὴ, ἡ.
 prepare, παρα-σκευάζω (σκευάσω,
 ἐσκεύασα, ἐσκεύασμαι, ἐσκευά-
 σθην).
 presence (to one's) = to one's self.
 present (be), πάρ-ειμι (ἔσομαι);
 partic. as adj., παρ-ών.
 press hard, πιέζω, πίεσω, ἐπίεσα, ἐπιέ-
 σθην.
 pretend, προσ-ποιέομαι (ποιήσομαι,
 etc.).
 pretext, πρόφασις, εὐς, ἡ.
 prevent, κωλύω, κωλύσω, etc.
- prey, θηρίον, τό.
 private (for — use), εἰς τὸ ἴδιον.
 prize, ἀθλον, τό.
 proceed, πορεύομαι, πορεύσομαι, etc.
 proceeding, πρᾶγμα, πράγματος, τό.
 promise, make a —, ὑπ-ισχέομαι,
 ὑπο-σχέσομαι, ὑπ-έσχημαι, ὑπ-
 εσχόμην.
 prompted, ἐγκέλευστος.
 promptly, εὐθύς.
 property, χρήματα, τά.
 propose, εἶπον, ἐρῶ, εἶπα, εἶρηκα,
 εἶρημαι, ἐρρήθην.
 prosperous, εὐδαίμων.
 prove, — one's self, φαίνομαι, φανοθ-
 μαι, ἐφηνάμην, πέφασμαι, ἐφάνην;
 — false, mid. of ψεύδω, ψεύσω,
 ἔψευσα, ἔψευσμαι, ἐψεύσθην.
 province, ἀρχή, ἡ.
 provisions, τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.
 Proxenus, Πρόξενος, ό.
 Psarus, Ψάρος, ό.
 punish, τιμωρέομαι, τιμωρήσομαι, etc.
 punishment, δίκη, ἡ.
 pursue, διώκω, διώξω, ἐδίωξα, δεδίωχα,
 ἐδίωχθην.
 pursuit, τὸ διώκειν.
 put, (ἐν-)τίθημι, θήσω, ἔθηκα and
 ἔθεμεν, τέθεικα, τέθειμαι, ἐτέθην;
 — aside, κατα-τίθημι; — on, ἐν-
 δύω (δύσω, ἔδυσα and ἔδυν, δέδυκα,
 δέδυμαι, ἐδύθην); — on full armor,
 mid. of ἐξ-οπλίζω (ὥπλισα, ὥπλι-
 σμαι, ὥπλισθην); — out of the
 way, ἐκποδῶν ποιέομαι (ποιήσομαι,
 etc.); — to death, ἀπο-κτείνω
 (κτενῶ, ἔκτεινα, ἔκτονα, ἔκτανον).
 Pyramus, Πύραμος, ό.

Q

- quarrels (have), ἀμφι-λέγω (λέξω,
 ἔλεξα, λέλεγμαι, ἐλέχθην).
 quart, χοῖνιξ, χοῖνικος, ἡ.

quarters, *θύραι, αἱ*; back to —, *κατὰ χώρῳ.*

queen, *βασίλεια, ἡ*; (Cilician), *Κιλισσοῦσα, ἡ.*

quickly, *ταχέως, ταχύ.*

quietly, *ἡσυχῇ.*

R

raft, *σχεδῖα, ἡ.*

raise, *αἶρω, ἀρῶ, ἦρα, ἦρκα, ἦρμαι, ἦρθην*; — (an army), *ἀθροίζω, ἀθροίσω, etc.*; — (a shout), *ποιέομαι, ποιήσομαι, etc.*

ranks, *τάξεις, αἱ*; open —, mid. of *δι-ίστημι.*

rapidly, *ταχέως.*

reach, *ἀφ-ικνέομαι (ἵξομαι, ἵγμαι, ἰκόμεν)* and prep. with acc.; = touch, *ἄπτω, ἄψω, ἤψα, ἤμμαι, ἤφθην*; reaching from head to foot, *ποδῆρης.*

read, *ἀνα-γινώσκω (γινώσσομαι, ἔγνωκα, ἔγνωσμαι, ἔγνώσθην, ἔγνων).*

ready, *ἔτοιμος*; *παρεσκευασμένος.*

reality (in), *τῷ ὄντι.*

realize, *γινώσκω, γινώσσομαι, ἔγνωκα, ἔγνωσμαι, ἔγνώσθην, ἔγνων.*

really, *τῷ ὄντι.*

rear (in the), *ὀπισθεν.*

reason (for this), *τούτου ἕνεκα* or *διὰ τοῦτο.*

receive, *δέχομαι, δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην, δέδεγμαι, ἐδέχθην.*

reed, *κάλαμος, ὁ.*

refuse, *οὐκ ἐθέλω, ἐθελήσω, ἠθέλησα, ἠθέληκα.*

regard (have), *ἐπι-μελέομαι (μελήσομαι, etc.),* with gen.

region, *χώρῳ, ἡ*; *τόπος, ὁ.*

rein in, *ἐφ-ίστημι (ἐπι-στήσω, ἔστησα and ἔστην, ἔστηκα, ἔσταμαι, ἐστάθην).*

related (be), *προσ-ῆκω (ἤξω).*

relative, *συγγενής.*

remain, *μένω, μενῶ, ἔμεινα, μεμένηκα.*

remember, mid. and pass. of *μνησκω, μνήσω, ἔμνησα, μέμνημαι* (with force of present), *ἐμνήσθην, remind.*

repel, *ἀλέξω, ἀλέξομαι, ἠλεξάμην.*

reply, *ἀπο-κρίνομαι (κρινοῦμαι, ἐκρίν-άμην, κέκριμαι).*

report, *λόγος, ὁ*; (*ἀπ-*)*αγγέλλω, ἀγγελῶ, ἡγγεῖλα, ἡγγέλκα, ἡγγελμαι, ἡγγέλθην*; — at, *πάρ-ειμι εἰς.*

resolve, *δοκεῖ* with dat. (*δοκέω, δόξω, ἔδοξα, δέδογμαι, ἐδόχθην).*

rest under arms, *τίθεται τὰ ὅπλα (θήσομαι, etc.; see τίθηναι)*; — of, *ὁ ἄλλος, οἱ ἄλλοι.*

restore, *κατ-άγω (ἄξω, ἦχα, ἦγμαι, ἦχθην, ἦγαγον).*

retire to one's position = rest under arms in position.

retreat, *ἀπο-χωρέω (χωρήσω, etc.).*

return, *ἀπ-έρχομαι (ἐλήλυθα, ἦλθον)*; in —, *ἀντί* with gen.

review, *ἐξέτασις, εὖς, ἡ*; *θεωρέω, θεωρήσω, etc.*

revolt, mid., with 2 a. and pf. act., of *ἀφ-ίστημι (στήσω, ἔστησα and ἔστην, ἔστηκα, ἔσταμαι, ἐστάθην).*

rich, *εὐδαίμων.*

ride, *ἐλαύνω, ἐλῶ, ἤλασα, ἐλήλακα, ἐλήλαμαι, ἠλάθην*; — along, *παρ-ελαύνω*; — forward, *προ-ελαύνω*; — off, *ἀπ-ελαύνω*; — up, *προσ-ελαύνω.*

right, *δίκαιος*; — (wing), *δεξιός*; — wing, *δεξιόν, τό*; all —, *εὖ.*

rise, mid. of *ἀν-ίστημι (στήσω, ἔστησα and ἔστην, ἔστηκα, ἔσταμαι, ἐστάθην).*

river, *ποταμός, ὁ.*

road, *ὁδός, ἡ*; by the roadside, *παρὰ τὴν ὁδόν.*

rob of, mid. of ἀφ-αιρέω (αἰρήσω, ἤρηνκα, ἤρηνμαι, ἤρέθην, εἶλον).

rouse, ἀν-ίστημι (στήσω, ἔστησα and ἔστην, ἔστηκα, ἔσταμαι, ἐστάθην).

route, ὁδός, οὗ, ἡ.

ruin = spoil.

rule, — over, ἄρχω, ἄρξω, ἤρξα, ἤρηνμαι, ἤρηνθην.

run, τρέχω, δραμοῦμαι, δεδράμηκα, δεδράμημαι, ἔδραμον; — down, κατα-λαμβάνω (λήψομαι, εἰληφα, εἰλημμαι, εἰλήφθην, ἔλαβον); on the —, δρόμῳ; — away, φεύγω.

runaway, φεύγων, ὁ.

rush, mid. of ἵμι, ἦσω, ἦκα and εἵμεν, εἶκα, εἵμαι, εἶθην.

S

sacrifice, celebrate with —, θύω, θύσω, ἔθυσσα, τέθυκα, τέθυμαι, ἐτύθην.

safe, ἀσφαλής.

safety, τὸ ἀσφαλές.

sail, ιστίον, τό; πλέω, πλεύσομαι and πλευσοῦμαι, ἔπλευσα, πέπλευκα, πέπλευμαι; — away, off, ἀπο-πλέω; — round, περι-πλέω.

sake of (for the), ἕνεκα and gen.

salute, προσ-κυνέω (κυνήσω, etc.).

same, ὁ αὐτός.

Samian, Σάμιος.

Sardis, Σάρδεις, Σάρδεων, αἱ.

satisfy, ἐμ-πίμπλημι (πλήσω, ἔπλησα, πέπληκα, πέπλη(σ)μαι, ἐπλήσθην).

satrap, σατράπης, ου.

Satyr, Σάτυρος, ὁ.

say, λέγω, λέξω, ἔλεξα, λέλεγμαι, ἐλέχθην; φημί, φήσω, ἔφησα; εἶπον, ἔρῳ, εἶπα, εἶρηκα, εἶρημαι, ἐρρήθην.

scatter, δια-σπάω (σπάσω, ἔσπασα, ἔσπακα, ἔσπασμαι, ἐσπάσθην).

scythe, δρέπανον, τό; — bearing, δρεπανηφόρος.

sea, θάλαττα; by —, κατὰ θάλατταν.

seated (be), κάθ-ημαι.

second time, δεύτερον.

secret (keep), λανθάνω, λήσω, ἔλησα, λέληθα, λέλησμαι, ἔλαθον.

secretly, λάθρα.

see, ὁράω, ὄψομαι, ἑώρακα and ἑόρακα, ἑώραμαι or ὤμαι, ὥφθην, εἶδον; — to it, impersonal μέλει, *it is a care to one* (μελήσει, ἐμέλησε, μεμέληκε); ἐπι-μελέομαι.

seem, φαίνομαι, φανοῦμαι, ἐφηνάμην, πέφασμαι, ἐφάνην; δοκέω, δόξω, ἔδοξα, δέδογμαι, ἐδόχθην; — hest, δοκέω.

seize, ἀρπάζω, ἀρπάσω, etc.; αἰρέω, αἰρήσω, ἤρηνκα, ἤρηνμαι, ἤρέθην, εἶλον.

sell, πωλέω, πωλήσω, etc.

send, πέμπω, πέμψω, ἔπεμψα, πέπομφα, πέπεμμαι, ἐπέμφθην; = shoot, ἀφ-ίτημι; — back, ἀπο-πέμπω; — for, μετα-πέπομαι; — in, ἀπο-πέμπω; with, συμ-πέμπω.

set out, ὁρμάομαι, ὁρμήσομαι, etc.

seven, ἑπτά.

several, ἑκαστοί.

sew, συνσπάω.

shield, ἀσπίς, ἀσπίδος, ἡ; wicker —, γέρρον, τό.

ship, ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ.

shirt, χιτῶν, χιτῶνος, ὁ.

shortest road (by), τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν.

short sword, ἀκινάκης, ου.

shout, κραυγή, ἡ; βοάω, βοήσομαι, ἐβόησα.

shouting, κραυγή, ἡ.

show, (ἐπι-)δείκνυμι, δείξω, ἔδειξα, δέδειχα, δέδειγμαι, ἐδείχθην.

sick (be), ἀσθενέω, ἀσθενήσω.

sides (on both), ἐκατέρωθεν.

- sight (at — of) = seeing; in plain —, καταφανής; come into —, καταφανής γίγνομαι.
- siglus, σίγλος, ό.
- sign (as a — of condemnation) = for death.
- Silanus, Σιλανός, ό.
- silence (in), σιγή.
- silver, ἀργύριον, τό.
- since, ἐπεί, ὅτε.
- sing the paeon, παιανίζω, ἐπαιάνισα.
- sink, κατα-δύω (δύσω, ἔδυσα and ἔδυν, δέδυκα, δέδυμαι, ἔδυθην).
- situated (be), pass. of οἰκέω, οἰκήσω, etc.
- six, ἑξ; — hundred, ἑκατόσιοι; — thousand, ἑκακισχίλιοι.
- skin, διφθέρᾱ, ἡ.
- slay, κατα-κόπτω (κόψω, ἔκοψα, κέκοφα, κέκομαι, ἐκόπην); — upon, ἐπι-σφάττω (σφάξω, ἔσφαξα, ἔσφαγμαι, ἔσφαγην).
- slip away, ἀπο-διδράσκω (δράσσομαι, δέδρακα, ἔδραῦν).
- slowly, βραδέως.
- so, οὖν; = thus, οὕτως; — as, (οὕτως) ὥστε; — called, καλούμενος; — great, τοσοῦτος; — many, τοσοῦτοι.
- Socrates, Σωκράτης, οὐς, ό.
- soldier, στρατιώτης, ον.
- solid, πλήρης.
- some, τινές; some, others, οἱ μέν . . . οἱ δέ; somebody, τις; something, τι.
- sometimes, ἐνίοτε.
- somewhat, τι.
- son, υἱός, ό.
- soon, εὐθύς, ταχύ; as — as possible, ὡς τάχιστα.
- sooner, πρότερος.
- soothsayer, μάντις, μάντεως, ό.
- sort (of that), τοιοῦτος; of what —, οἷος.
- sound the paeon, παιανίζω, ἐπαιάνισα.
- source, πηγαί, αἱ.
- space between, μέσον, τό.
- speak, λέγω, λέξω, ἔλεξα, λέλεγμαι, ἐλέχθην; εἶπον, ἐρώ, εἶπα, εἶρηκα, εἶρημαι, ἐρρήθην; — lightly of, πρῶτος λέγω.
- spear, δόρυ, δόρατος, τό; — point, λόγχη, ἡ.
- speech, λόγος, ό.
- speed (at full), ἀνὰ κράτος.
- speedily, ταχέως.
- spend, — money, δαπανάω, δαπανήσω, etc.
- spirit, γνώμη, ἡ.
- split, σχίζω, ἔσχισα, ἔσχισθην.
- spoil, λυμαίνομαι, λυμανοῦμαι, ἐλυμνήμην, λελύμασμαι, ἐλυμάνθην.
- sports, ἀγών, ἀγώνος, ό.
- spot, χωρίον, τό.
- spring, κρήνη, ἡ; = mount, ἀναβαίνω.
- squadron, ἔλῃ, ἡ.
- square, πλαίσιον, τό.
- stade, στάδιον, τό.
- stand, mid. with 2 aor. and pf. act., of ἵστημι, στήσω, ἔστησα and ἔστην, ἔστηκα, ἔσταμαι, ἐστάθην; — up, ἀν-ἵστημι; — under arms, τιθεμαι τὰ ὅπλα; = bear, mid. of ἀν-έχω (ἀνα-σχήσω or ἔξω, ἔσχηκα, ἔσχημαι, ἔσχον).
- start, ὀρμάομαι, ὀρμήσομαι, etc.
- startle, ἐκ-πλήττω (πλήξω, ἐπληξα, πέπληγα, πέπληγμαι, ἐπλήγην, but ἔξ-επλήγην).
- station, καθ-ἵστημι (στήσω, ἔστησα and ἔστην, ἔστηκα, ἔσταμαι, ἐστάθην).
- stay, μένω, μενῶ, ἔμεινα, μεμένηκα.
- stealth (escape by), ἀπο-διδράσκω (δράσσομαι, δέδρακα, ἔδραῦν).
- steep, ὄρθιος.

step (with even), ἐν ἴσφ.
 stern, χαλεπός.
 still, μέντοι; ἔτι.
 stocked with, πλήρης.
 stone, λίθος; λίθοις βάλλω; — to death, κατα-πετρόω (ἐπετρώθη).
 stop, παύω, παύσω, etc.; = halt, ἵστημι, στήσω, ἕστησα and ἕστην, ἕστηκα, ἕσταμαι, ἐστάθην.
 story, λόγος, ὁ; the — of, τὰ περὶ and gen.
 stream, ποταμός, ὁ.
 strigil, στλεγίς, ἰδος, ἡ.
 strike, ἐν-τυχάνω (τεύχομαι, τε-τύχηκα, ἔτυχον).
 stronger, κρείττων.
 stronghold, χωρίον ὀχυρόν.
 subject, ὑπήκοος.
 succeed in, καλῶς κατα-πράττω (πράξω, ἔπραξα, πέπραγα and πέπραχα, πέπραγμαι, ἐπραχθην).
 success (wish), εὐτυχεῖν εὐχομαι.
 such, τοιοῦτος.
 suffer, πάσχω, πείσομαι, πέπονθα, ἔπαθον.
 suffering, πάθος, πάθους, τό.
 sum (of money), χρῆσιον, τό.
 summon, μετα-πέμπομαι (πέμψομαι, ἐπεμψάμην, πέπεμμαι).
 superior, κρείττων.
 supplies, τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.
 support, τρέφω, θρέψω, ἔθρεψα, τέτροφα, τέθραμμαι, ἐτρέφθην and ἐτράφην; τροφή, ἡ.
 sure (be) = take care, ἐπι-μελέομαι (μελήσομαι, etc.).
 surprised (be), θαυμάζω, θαυμάσομαι, θαύμασα, etc.
 surround, περι-έχω (ἔξω and σχήσω, ἔσχηκα, ἔσχημαι, ἔσχον); κυκλόω, κυκλώσω, etc.
 survey, κατα-θεάσομαι (θεάσομαι, etc.).
 suspect, ὑπ-οπτεύω (ὀπτεύσω, ὤπτευσα, ὤπτεύθην).

suspicion, ὑποψία, ἡ.
 sweat (in a), ἰδρῶν, partic. of ἰδρώω, ἰδρωσα.
 swift, ταχύς; swifter, θάττων.
 sword, μάχαιρα, ἡ; short —, ἀκινάκης, οὐ.
 Syennesis, Συνέννεσις, ἰος, ὁ.
 Syria, Συρία, ἡ.
 Syrian, Σύρος; adj., Σύριος.

T

take, λαμβάνω, λήψομαι, εἴληφα, εἴλημαι, ἐλήφθην, ἔλαβον; = make, mid. of ποιέω, ποιήσω, etc.; — along or with, παρα-λαμβάνω; — care, ἐπι-μελέομαι (μελήσομαι, etc.); — the field, στρατεύομαι, στρατεύσομαι, etc.; — place, γίγνομαι, γενήσομαι, γεγέννημαι, γέγονα, ἐγενόμην; — one's place or position, mid. of καθ-ίστημι (στήσω, ἕστησα and ἕστην, ἕστηκα, ἕσταμαι, ἐστάθην); — ship, ἐμβαίνο εἰς πλοῖον.
 talent, τάλαντον, τό.
 talk, λέγω, λέξω, ἔλεξα, λέλεγμαι, ἐλέχθην.
 tall, μακρός. (Tall, 115-125, 129.)
 tame, πρῶτος.
 Tamos, Ταμός, ὁ.
 Tarsus, Ταρσοί, αἱ.
 tavern, καπηλεῖον, τό; — keeper, ὁ καπηλεῖον ἔχων.
 tell, λέγω, λέξω, ἔλεξα, λέλεγμαι, ἐλέχθην; — the truth, ἀληθεύω, ἀληθεύσω, etc.
 ten, δέκα.
 tent, σκηνή, ἡ.
 terms (make), κατα-λύνω; συν-αλλάττω.
 territory, χώρα, ἡ.
 than, ἢ.
 Thapsacus, Θάψακος, ἡ.

- that, those, *ἐκεῖνος, ἐκεῖνοι*; those who, *οἱ* and partic.
- the, *ὁ, ἡ, τό*.
- their, *ἐαυτῶν*, but commonly expressed by the article.
- themselves, *ἐαυτῶν*.
- then, *οὖν, δὴ*; of time, *τότε, ἔπειτα*.
- there, thereupon, *ἐνταῦθα*.
- therefore, *διό*.
- Thessalian, *Θετταλός, ὁ*.
- thigh-pieces, *παραμηρίδια, τά*.
- thing, *πρᾶγμα, πράγματος, τό*; these things, *ταῦτα*.
- think, *οἶμαι, οἰήσομαι, φήθην*; *ἡγέομαι, ἡγήσομαι*, etc.; — best, *δοκέω, δόξα, ἔδοξα, δέδογμαι, ἐδόχθην*.
- third, *τρίτος*; — time, *τρίτον*.
- thirty, *τριάκοντα*; — thousand, *τρεις μυριάδες*.
- this, *οὗτος*; *δε*.
- thoroughly frightened (be), *ἐκπλήττομαι*.
- those, *ἐκεῖνοι*; — at home, *οἱ οἶκοι*; — who, *οἱ* and partic.
- though, *καίπερ* with concessive participle.
- thousand, *χίλιοι*.
- Thracian, *Θράξ, Θρακός, ὁ*.
- three, *τρεις*; — hundred, *τριακόσιοι*.
- throne, *βασιλεῖα, ἡ*.
- through, *διά* and gen.
- throw, *βάλλω, βαλῶ, βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην, ἔβαλον*; *ἔημι, ἤσω, ἤκα* and *εἶμεν, εἶκα, εἶμαι, εἶθην*; — off, *ρίπτω, ρίψω, ἔρριψα, ἔρριφα, ἔρριμμαι, ἐρρίφθην* and *ἐρρίφην*.
- thus, *οὕτως*.
- Thymbrium, *Θύμβριον, τό*.
- Tigris, *Τίγρης, ἡτος, ὁ*.
- time, *χρόνος, ὁ*; *ῥᾶ, ἡ*; = leisure, *σχολή, ἡ*; many times, *πολλάκις*.
- Tissaphernes, *Τισσαφέρνης, οὗς, ὁ*.
to, *ἐπί, παρά*, or *πρός* with acc.; but often expressed by dative; — one's home, *οἶκαδε*.
- together (come), *συν-γίγνομαι*; get —, *συν-άγω*.
- too, *καί*; be — late for, *ὑστερέω*.
- touch, *ἅπτω, ἅψω, ἥψα, ἥμμαι, ἥφθην*.
- town, *πόλις, πόλεως, ἡ*.
- track, *ἔχνος, οὗς, τό*.
- trail, *στρίβος, ὁ*.
- treated well (be), *εὖ πάσχω, πείσομαι, πέπονθα, ἔπαθον*.
- tree, *δένδρον, τό*.
- trench, *τάφρος, οὗ, ἡ*.
- trial, *κρίσις, κρίσεως, ἡ*.
- tribute, *δασμός, ὁ*.
- trireme, *τριήρης, τριήρους, ἡ*.
- troop, *τάξις, τάξεως, ἡ*; troops, *στρατιῶται, οἱ*.
- trouble, *λυπέω, λυπήσω*, etc.; be troubled, *λυπέομαι* or *ἄχθομαι, ἀχθέσομαι, ἡχθέσθην*; troubles, *πράγματα*; out of —, *ἔξω τοῦ δεινοῦ*.
- trumpet (blow with), *σαλπίζω, ἐσάλπιγξα*.
- trust, *πιστεύω, πιστεύσω*, etc., with dat.
- trusty, *πιστός*.
- truth (tell the), *ἀληθεύω*.
- try, *πειράομαι, πειράσομαι*, etc.
- tunic, *χιτών, χιτῶνος, ὁ*.
- turn, *τρέπω, τρέψω, ἔτρεψα* and *ἔτραπον, τέτροφα* and *τέτραφα, τέτραμμαι, ἐτρέφθην* and *ἐτράπην*; — out, mid. of *καθ-ίστημι* (*καταστήσω, ἔστησα* and *ἔστην, ἔστηκα, ἔσταμαι, ἐστάθην*).
- twenty, *εἴκοσι*; — five, *πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι*.
- two, *δύο*; — hundred, *διᾱκόσιοι*; — thousand, *δισχίλιοι*.

U

unaware, ἀπαράσκευος.
 unbeknown, λάθρα, with gen.
 undertaking, πράξις, πράξεως, ἡ.
 unless, εἰ μή, ἔαν μή.
 unprepared, ἀπαράσκευος.
 unprotected, ψιλός.
 until, ἕως, μέχρι, πρὶν.
 up (come, go), ἀνα-βαίνω.
 upon, εἰς, ἐπὶ.
 urge, κελεύω, κελεύσω, ἐκέλευσα, κέ-
 λευκα, κεκέλευσμαι, ἐκέλεύσθην.
 use (for one's own), εἰς τὸ ἴδιον;
 not of any —, οὐδὲν ὄφελος; verb,
 χρᾶσμαι, χρήσομαι, ἐχρησάμην,
 κέχρημαι, ἐχρήσθην; used to,
 impf.
 useful, ὠφέλιμος.
 utter, λέγω, λέξω, ἔλεξα, λέλεγμαι,
 ἐλέχθην.

V

valuable, ἄξιος.
 very, expressed by superlative; adj.,
 αὐτός.
 vexed (be), ἄχθομαι, ἀχθέσομαι,
 ἤχθέσθην.
 victorious, νικῶν, partic. of νικάω;
 be —, κρατέω, κρατήσω, etc.
 victory, νίκη, ἡ; gain a —, νικάω,
 νικήσω, etc.
 view (in plain), καταφανής; with a
 —, ὥς and fut. partic.
 vigorously, ἰσχυρῶς.
 village, κώμη, ἡ.
 vine, ἄμπελος, οὐ, ἡ.
 voice, φωνή, ἡ.

W

wagon, ἅμαξα, ἡ.
 wait, μένω, μενῶ, ἔμεινα, μεμένηκα;
 lie in —, ἐνεδρεύω.

wall, τεῖχος, τεῖχους, τό.
 want, βούλομαι, βουλήσομαι, βεβού-
 λημαι, ἐβουλήθην.
 war (be at — with), (make), πο-
 λεμέω, πολεμήσω, etc., with dat.;
 — chariot, ἄρμα, ἄρματος, τό.
 waste (lay), κάω, καύσω, ἔκαυσα,
 κέκαυκα, κέκαυμαι, ἐκαύθην.
 watch to see, ἐπι-μελέομαι (μελή-
 σμαι, etc.).
 watchword, σύνθημα, ατος, τό.
 water, ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό.
 way, ὁδός; in the following —, τόνδε
 τὸν τρόπον, ὧδε; out of the —,
 ἐκποδών; make —, ὑπο-χωρέω
 (χωρήσω, etc.) and dat.; in a bad
 —, κακῶς.
 we, ἡμεῖς.
 weak, ἀσθενής.
 wear, ἔχω, ἔξω and σχήσω, ἔσχηκα,
 ἔσχημαι, ἔσχον.
 weep, δακρῦω, δακρῦσω, ἐδάκρυσα,
 δεδάκρυμαι.
 well, εὖ; as — as, ὥς καί; — dis-
 posed, εὐνοϊκῶς.
 wet, βρέχω, ἔβρεξα, βέβρεγμαι, ἐβρέ-
 χθην.
 what, τίς, τί; = that which, ὁ and
 participle; whatever, ὅστις.
 wheat, πυροί, οἱ.
 wheel about, περι-πτύσσω (πτύξω,
 ἔπτυσα, ἔπτυγμαι, ἐπτύχθην).
 when, whenever, ὅτε, ὁπότε, ἐπεὶ,
 ἐπειδή; with subjunctive, ὅταν,
 ἐπὶν, etc.
 where, wherever, ποῦ; ὅπου, ἔνθα.
 whether, εἰ; — . . . or, εἴτε . . . εἴτε.
 which, ὅς, ἥ, ὅ.
 while, ὥς; = but, δέ; often ex-
 pressed by present partic.
 who, relative, ὅς; interrogative, τίς;
 whoever, whosoever, ὅστις, ὅς
 (ἄν).
 whole, ὅλος.

why, τί; διὰ τί; = for, γάρ; that is —, διὰ δὲ τοῦτο.	wooden, ξύλινος.
wide, εὐρύς.	word, λόγος, ὁ.
width, εὖρος.	work, ποιέω, ποιήσω, etc.
wife, γυνή.	wormwood, ἀψίνθιον, τό.
wild, ἄγριος.	worst, κάκιστος.
willing (be), = wish.	worth, worthy, ἄξιος.
willingly, ἐκόν.	wound, τιτρώσκω, τρώσω, ἔτρωσα, τέτρωμαι, ἐτρώθην.
wine, οἶνος, ὁ.	wreck, λυμαίνομαι, λυμανοῦμαι, ἐλῶ- μηνάμην, λελύμασμαι, ἐλυμάνθην.
wing, πτέρυξ, πτέρυγος, ἡ; of an army, κέρας, κέρως, τό.	write, γράφω, γράψω, ἔγραψα, γέ- γραφα, γέγραμμαι, ἐγράφη.
wise, σοφός.	wrong, be in the —, ἀδικέω, ἀδι- κήσω, etc.
wish, βούλομαι, βουλήσομαι, βεβού- λημαι, ἐβουλήθην; ἐθέλω, ἐθελήσω, ἠθέλησα, ἠθέληκα; = pray, εὐ- χομαι, εὐξομαι, ἠϋξάμην.	wrong-doer, ἀδικῶν.
with, σύν and dat.; μετά and gen.; ἔχων, <i>having</i> ; — aid of, σύν; (make terms) —, πρὸς and acc.; be —, πάρ-ειμι.	X
withdraw, ἀπο-χωρέω, ὑπο-χωρέω (χωρήσω, etc.).	Xenias, Ξενίας, ου.
within, εἶσω.	Xenophon, Ξενοφῶν, ὦντος, ὁ.
without, ἔξω; ἔρημος; — the knowl- edge of, λάθρα and gen.; — noise, ἡσυχῇ.	Xerxes, Ξέρξης, ου.
witness, θεωρέω, θεωρήσω, etc.	Y
woman, γυνή.	yet, μέντοι; ὅμως.
wonder, θαυμάζω, θαυμάσομαι, ἐθαύ- μασα, etc.	you, σύ; — know, — remember, δέ.
wood, ξύλον, τό.	younger, νεώτερος.
	your, σός; ὑμέτερος.
	youth, νεανίας, ου.
	Z
	zealously, προθύμως.

.

